

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ
ДВНЗ «УЖГОРОДСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ»

Мишко С.А., Андрейко В.І., Мишко А.В.

НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК З АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ ЗА ПРОФЕСІЙНИМ СПРЯМУВАННЯМ

*для студентів спеціальностей
«Історія та археологія» і «Міжнародні відносини,
суспільні комунікації та регіональні студії»*



УДК 811. 111: 81' 1: 913 (410): 913 (411)
ББК 81. 2 Англ + 81 + 26.89 (4 Вел – 4 Вел 1)
М 71

Мишко С. А., Андрейко В. І., Мишко А. В.

Навчальний посібник з англійської мови за професійним спрямуванням для студентів спеціальностей «Історія та археологія» та «Міжнародні відносини, суспільні комунікації та регіональні студії». – Ужгород: Гражда, 2021. – 272 с.

Навчальний посібник містить оригінальні джерела інформації, присвячені видатним історичним подіям та особистостям. Тексти супроводжуються комплексами вправ, спрямованих на розвиток усіх видів мовленнєвої діяльності. Навчальний посібник рекомендується для викладачів та студентів фахових факультетів вищих навчальних закладів України, а також для тих, хто хоче поглибити свої знання в галузі іноземних мов, історії та міжнародних відносин.

Автори:

Мишко С. А. – канд. пед. наук, доцент, зав.каф. полікультурної освіти та перекладу ДВНЗ «УжНУ»

Андрейко В. І. – канд. іст. наук, доц., зав. каф. міжнародних студій та суспільних комунікацій

Мишко А. В. – асистент кафедри полікультурної освіти та перекладу ДВНЗ «УжНУ»

Рецензент:

Вовканич І. І. – доктор історичних наук, професор, декан факультету історії та міжнародних відносин ДВНЗ «УжНУ»

*Затверджено на засіданні Вченої ради факультету історії та міжнародних відносин ДВНЗ «УжНУ»
(протокол №1 від 5 березня 2021 р.)*

CONTENTS

| | |
|---|------------|
| ПЕРЕДМОВА | 4 |
| Unit 1. 5 Famous Pyrrhic Victories..... | 5 |
| Unit 2. 7 Brilliant Military Retreats..... | 15 |
| Unit 3. 7 Unusual Military Units..... | 28 |
| Unit 4. 8 Legendary Battle Cries..... | 41 |
| Unit 5. 7 Brutal Sieges..... | 55 |
| Unit 6. 6 Wars Fought for Ridiculous Reasons..... | 68 |
| Unit 7. 6 Unusual Riots..... | 80 |
| Unit 8. 7 Failed Predictions from History..... | 92 |
| Unit 9. 8 Early American Political Scandals..... | 105 |
| Unit 10. 8 Astonishing Ancient Sites in the Americas..... | 122 |
| Unit 11. 8 Mysterious Underground Cities..... | 136 |
| Unit 12. 8 Legendary Ancient Libraries..... | 150 |
| Unit 13. 8 Remarkable Early Maps..... | 165 |
| Unit 14. 8 Notable Lotteries from History..... | 179 |
| Unit 15. 6 Historical Figures Who May or May Not Have Existed..... | 193 |
| Unit 16. 6 Child Monarchs Who Changed History..... | 205 |
| Unit 17. 7 People Who Pretended to be Royals..... | 217 |
| Unit 18. 7 Historical Figures Who Grew Up as Orphans..... | 231 |
| Unit 19. 7 History’s Great Romantics..... | 244 |
| Unit 20. 7 Presidential War Stories..... | 257 |
| | |
| SOURCE MATERIAL | 271 |

ПЕРЕДМОВА

Навчальний посібник з англійської мови за професійним спрямуванням для студентів спеціальностей «Історія та археологія» та «Міжнародні відносини, суспільні комунікації та регіональні студії» містить оригінальні джерела інформації, присвячені видатним історичним подіям та особистостям.

Посібник складається з 20 розділів, побудованих за єдиною структурою, в кожному з яких історичні спецтексти супроводжується комплексами вправ, спрямованих на розвиток основних мовленнєвих навичок. Значна увага приділяється розвитку навичок перекладу. Кожен розділ завершується тестами на перевірку рівня засвоєння навчального матеріалу.

Багатий фактичний матеріал текстів може використовуватися студентами для закріплення знань, отриманих на лекціях, самостійного опрацювання тем за програмою, для написання курсових та дипломних робіт, тощо. Системи вправ можуть бути використані на практичних заняттях з іноземних мов, історії, міжнародних відносин або для самостійної підготовки студентів.

Посібник адаптований до вимог навчальної програми з іноземних мов та історії у системі вищої освіти і, безумовно, сприятиме підвищенню мотивації студентів, активізації самостійної роботи, глибшому оволодінню матеріалом та систематизації знань.

Посібник рекомендується для викладачів та студентів факультетів історії та міжнародних відносин, а також для студентів інших факультетів вищих навчальних закладів України, які хочуть поглибити свої знання в галузі іноземних мов, історії та міжнародних відносин.

UNIT I

5 Famous Pyrrhic Victories

<https://www.history.com/news/5-famous-pyrrhic-victories>

1. The Battles of Heraclea and Asculum



Pyrrhus's elephants. (Credit: The Print Collector/Print Collector/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The original Pyrrhic victory came courtesy of Pyrrhus of Epirus, a Greek king who was undone by his costly battles against the Romans. Pyrrhus first invaded Italy in 280 B.C. after allying himself with Tarentum, a Greek-speaking city that resented the Roman Republic's increased domination over their homeland. He arrived with a force of some 25,000 men and 20 war elephants—the first the Roman legionaries had ever faced—and immediately scored a famous victory in his first battle at Heraclea. The following year, he bested the Romans a second time during a heated clash at Asculum.

Pyrrhus fancied himself a latter day Alexander the Great, and he'd hoped his invasion would give his empire a foothold in Italy. But while he'd routed the Romans at both Heraclea and Asculum, he had also lost more than 7,500 of his most elite fighters, including many officers. Pyrrhus had no way of replacing his casualties, and his failure to deal the enemy a deathblow sent morale plummeting within his ranks. According to the ancient historian Plutarch, the warrior king was quoted as muttering, "If we are victorious in one more battle with the Romans, we shall be utterly ruined." Following a setback at the Battle of Beneventum in 275 B.C., he reluctantly called off his campaign and sailed back to Greece.

- 1) polite behaviour and respect for other people;
- 2) power or control over other people or things;
- 3) a very large grey mammal that has a trunk (= long nose) with which it can pick things up;
- 4) a soldier in an ancient Roman legion (= a large group of soldiers who form a part of an army)
- 5) a fight or argument between people;

6) a position from which you can improve your status or become more successful in an organization, profession, or market;

7) a person injured or killed in a serious accident or war

8) to fall very quickly and suddenly;

9) in a way that shows that you are not willing to do something and are therefore slow to do it;

10) to travel across water in a boat or ship, or to operate a boat or ship on the water.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who first invaded Italy in 280 B.C. after allying himself with Tarentum, a Greek-speaking city that resented the Roman Republic's increased domination over their homeland?

2. Characterize the army of Pyrrhus of Epirus.

3. Where did Pyrrhus of Epirus score a famous victory?

4. How many elite fighters, including officers did Pyrrhus of Epirus lose in the battles?

5. What did the king do following a setback at the Battle of Beneventum in 275 B.C.?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Battle of Malplaquet



*The Duke of Marlborough giving orders during the battle of Malplaquet.
(Credit: DeAgostini/Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

After King Charles II died without an heir in 1700, the War of the Spanish Succession erupted over who would assume his place on the Spanish throne. The struggle reached a bloody zenith at 1709's Battle of Malplaquet, where an alliance of some 100,000 Dutch, Austrian, Prussian and British fighters under the Duke of Marlborough met a 90,000-strong French army. Marlborough was

eager to crush the French forces, and on September 11, he launched a massive infantry and cavalry assault. The French had fortified themselves in a maze of entrenchments and obstacles, and it took seven grueling hours before the alliance finally punched through their lines and seized their works. By then, Marlborough's battered soldiers were too exhausted to press their advantage. The French were able to make an organized retreat with much of their force still intact.

Malplaquet would go down in history as the deadliest battle of the 18th century. The French suffered some 12,000 casualties, while Marlborough lost 24,000 men—nearly a quarter of his entire army. In a nod to Pyrrhus of Epirus, the French commander Claude de Villars is said to have told King Louis XIV, "If it please God to give your enemies another such victory, they are ruined." Along with leading to the removal of Marlborough, the bloodbath at Malplaquet helped sow the seeds of disunion within the anti-French alliance. By 1712, it had started to collapse.

1) a person who will legally receive money, property, or a title from another person, especially an older member of the same family, when that other person dies;

2) a process in which someone automatically takes an official position or job after someone else;

3) a man of very high rank in a country, or the ruler of a small independent country;

4) to defeat someone completely;

5) the part of an army that fights on foot;

6) a system of trenches (=long deep holes) dug by soldiers for defence or protection;

7) extremely tired;

8) remaining uninjured, sound, or whole;

9) the violent killing of many people at one time;

10) a situation in which a group of people cannot agree or work with each other.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What happened after King Charles II died without an heir in 1700?

2. When did the struggle reach a bloody zenith?

3. How much time did it take the alliance to punch through the French lines and seize their works?

4. Were the French or the British able to make an organized retreat with much of their force still intact?

5. What is the French commander Claude de Villars said to have told King Louis XIV?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Battle of Bunker Hill



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The American Revolution had turned bloody by the summer of 1775, but aside from minor skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, the colonials had yet to test their mettle against the British Army. That changed on June 17, when a ragtag group of 1,000 militiamen tried to check a British advance on the heights overlooking Boston. After fortifying Breed's Hill—the battle takes its name from Bunker Hill, the peak they were originally told to occupy—they faced down a superior force of some 2,200 British soldiers. The Americans' accurate musket fire drove back two separate British attacks, but by the third advance, they had expended their meager stores of ammunition. Following a few frantic minutes of hand-to-hand combat, the militiamen abandoned the hill and retreated.

The British victory at Bunker Hill came at a punishing cost. Compared to 400 killed or wounded for the colonials, the Redcoats sustained more than 1,000 casualties, and their heavy losses forced them to scrap plans to seize another piece of high ground on the outskirts of Boston. The Americans, meanwhile, hailed the defeat as a moral victory. They had gone head-to-head with a larger and better-equipped enemy, and had shown they would not be beaten without a fight. While British General William Howe lamented that his success had been "too dearly bought," patriot leader Nathanael Greene wrote that he wished the colonials could "sell them another hill at the same price."

1) courage and determination to do something even when it is very difficult;

2) consisting of parts or pieces that are in no particular order or system;

3) the pointed top of a mountain, or the mountain itself;

4) a type of gun used in the past;

5) (of amounts or numbers) very small or not enough;

6) objects such as bullets and bombs that can be shot from a weapon;

7) to get rid of something that is no longer useful or wanted, often using its parts in new ways;

8) the areas that form the edge of a town or city;

9) to publicly praise or show approval for a person or an achievement;

10) to express sadness and feeling sorry about something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the American Revolution turn bloody?
2. What happened after the Americans' accurate musket fire had driven back two separate British attacks?
3. Did the British victory at Bunker Hill come at a punishing cost?
4. What did the patriot leader Nathanael Greene write while British General William Howe lamented that his success had been "too dearly bought"?
5. How did the Americans hail their defeat?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Battle of Borodino



Napoleon's retreat from Moscow

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The single bloodiest day of Napoleon Bonaparte's military career unfolded on September 7, 1812, when the French emperor was in the midst of his doomed invasion of Russia. During the early stages of the campaign, the Russian Imperial Army had been content to stage tactical retreats, and Napoleon's Grande Armée had advanced to within striking distance of Moscow. But when the French neared the small village of Borodino, Russian commander Mikhail Kutuzov finally turned his army around, constructed fortifications and prepared to make his stand. Napoleon wasted little time. In typically aggressive fashion, he threw his 130,000-strong army against the Russian lines in a frontal assault. Kutuzov's men responded with a series of brash counterattacks, and the battle hung in the balance until late afternoon, when the French finally claimed the main Russian redoubt. Napoleon was reluctant to send his elite Imperial Guard into the fray, however, and Kutuzov's army managed to escape destruction and flee.

Napoleon was left in full control of the battlefield, but it was a ground littered with French bodies. His Grande Armée had suffered some 30,000 casualties—a full 15,000 fewer than the Russians, but far too many to be

sustainable when fighting on unfriendly soil. The situation only worsened when Napoleon moved on Moscow a few days later. He found his victory prize largely abandoned, and shortly after his arrival, the Russians set fires that burned much of the city to the ground. Napoleon called off the campaign a month later, but his retreat was dogged by the Imperial Army and the frigid Russian winter, both of which took their toll. By the time the French finally escaped from hostile territory, they had suffered a staggering 400,000 casualties.

- 1) certain to fail or be destroyed;
- 2) fairly happy or satisfied;
- 3) an act of opposition, especially in order to defend someone or something;
- 4) to use something without care or thought;
- 5) having a lot of energy and the confidence to succeed, and not having much respect for others or worrying about their feeling;
- 6) a small, often hidden building in which soldiers can hide while they are fighting;
- 7) a fight or argument, esp. one in which several people take part;
- 8) a place where a battle is being fought or has been fought in the past;
- 9) (of weather conditions or the conditions in a room) extremely cold;
- 10) suffering, deaths, or damage.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was the single bloodiest day of Napoleon Bonaparte's military career?
2. What did Russian commander Mikhail Kutuzov do when the French neared the small village of Borodino?
3. Why was Napoleon reluctant to send his elite Imperial Guard into the fray?
4. What was Napoleon's retreat dogged by?
5. How many soldiers had been killed by the time the French finally escaped from hostile territory?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Battle of Chancellorsville



Painting showing Stonewall Jackson being wounded

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Few Civil War battles demonstrate General Robert E. Lee's tactical genius more than his May 1863 victory at Chancellorsville, Virginia. Despite being outnumbered 2-to-1 by General Joseph Hooker's troops, Lee took a huge gamble—and disregarded all military doctrine—by twice dividing his forces and taking the fight to the enemy. His bold strategy dashed Hooker's hopes of enveloping the Army of Northern Virginia, and ultimately forced the Union commander to withdraw across the Rappahannock River in disgrace.

While Chancellorsville is often called Lee's masterpiece, it came with a massive price tag. The Confederates sustained a crushing 13,000 casualties, including the friendly fire death of Stonewall Jackson, the brilliant general that Lee had called his "right arm." The Union Army of the Potomac suffered an even greater 17,000 killed, wounded and captured, but unlike the rebels, it had the manpower and recruitment numbers to replace its losses. More importantly, it had escaped destruction and lived to fight another day. Just two months after Chancellorsville, it would meet Lee again at the battle that is often called the turning point of the war: Gettysburg.

- 1) to be especially skilled at a particular activity;
- 2) an action that involves risk but that could have a good result;
- 3) a belief or set of beliefs, especially political or religious ones, that are taught and accepted by a particular group;
- 4) to disappoint someone by telling them that what they want is not possible;
- 5) to cover or surround something or someone up completely;
- 6) embarrassment and the loss of other people's respect, or behaviour that causes this;
- 7) to cause or allow something to continue for a period of time;
- 8) a person who is opposed to the political system in their country and tries to change it using force;
- 9) the supply of people who are able to work or who are needed to do a particular job;
- 10) the process of finding new people to join a company, organization, the army etc.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Which Civil War battle demonstrated General Robert E. Lee's tactical genius?
2. What ultimately forced the Union commander to withdraw across the Rappahannock River in disgrace?
3. How is Chancellorsville often called?
4. How could the Union Army of the Potomac replace its losses?
5. What battle is often called the turning point of the war?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Що таке «Піррова перемога»



Коли люди говорять про що-небудь, досягнуте занадто високою ціною, вони іноді використовують фразу «піррова перемога». Але чому таку перемогу називають саме Пірровою? Коріння цієї крилатої фрази сягають давнини.

Войовничий цар Епіру (др. Греція) Пірр бився з римлянами біля міста Аускуль (279 р. до н.е.). У його війську було багато бойових слонів. Між слонами він розташував метальників дротиків, стрільців з лука і рушив на легіонерів. Римляни люто билися, намагаючись відкинути важку піхоту ворога до підходу страшних тварин. Але проти слонів вони були в той час безсилі, «немов перед прибуваючою водою або руйнівним землетрусом», як пише історик Плутарх. Довелося римлянам відійти у свій табір. Пірр не переслідував супротивника. Його військо, як і римське, втратило за день 15 тисяч чоловік. «Ще одна така перемога, - сказав Пірр, - і ми просто загинемо».

Насправді, незабаром військо Пірра було розбите і сам він загинув. Цього разу цар напав на приморське місто греків Аргос. Вночі його воїни непоміченими проникли за міські стіни. Городяни відчували біду тільки тоді, коли через низькі ворота стали проводити слонів. З тварин довелося знімати вежі, потім знову ставити їх на місце. Це і викликало шум. Всю ніч йшли бої на вулицях і площах міста. Безліч каналів, які перетинали Аргос, роз'єднали нападників. У тісних вуличках, в темряві все змішалось; воїни не чули наказів начальників, начальники не знали, що і де відбувається. На світанку Пірр вирішив вийти з міста. Він послав гінця до сина, який з частиною військ залишався за стіною. Його воїни повинні були зробити в стіні широкий прохід, щоб військо могло швидше відступити з Аргоса. Але гонець переплутав наказ. Син Пірра повів воїнів у місто. У воротах зіткнулися два потоки. Почалася тиснява. На додаток до усього, посеред проходу улігся слон і не хотів вставати. Інший слон, самий величезний, на прізвисько Нікон, розшукуючи пораненого ватажка, помчав у ворота. Нікон топтав і своїх, і ворогів, поки не знайшов мертвого друга. Піднявши

воїна хоботом і поклавши його на бивні, він кинувся з міста, вбиваючи всіх зустрічних. У цьому звалищі загинув і сам Пірр. Він кинувся на молодого воїна, який поранив його списом. Мати воїна, як і всі аргвіянки, стояла в цей час на даху будинку. Побачивши небезпеку, що загрожувала синові, вона зірвала з даху черепицю і жбурнула її у Пірра. Удар прийшовся в незахищену шию. Пірр впав і був добитий на землі. Сучасники називали Пірра гравцем в кістки, який вміє зробити спритний кидок, але не знає, як скористатися своєю удачею. «Пірровою перемогою» називають зараз сумнівний успіх, для досягнення якого, принесені занадто великі жертви. Однак Пірр вписав у військову абетку і вдалу «букву»: він першим став обносити військовий табір оборонним ровом і валом. До нього римляни та інші племена ставили в таборі хатини або намети, оточували їх возами і виставляли пости.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a,b,c, or d.

1. The original Pyrrhic victory came courtesy of , a Greek king who was undone by his costly battles against the Romans. Pyrrhus first invaded Italy in 280 B.C.
 - a) Ptolemaios Keraunos
 - b) Antigonos II Gonatas
 - c) Ptolemy III Euergetes
 - d) Pyrrhus of Epirus
2. Following a setback at the Battle of Beneventum in 275 B.C., the Greek king reluctantly called off his campaign and sailed back to
 - a) Italy.
 - b) Greece.
 - c) China.
 - d) Mesopotamia.
3. After King died without an heir in 1700, the War of the Spanish Succession erupted over who would assume his place on the Spanish throne.
 - a) William I
 - b) Richard I
 - c) Charles II
 - d) Edward III
4. would go down in history as the deadliest battle of the 18th century.
 - a) Malplaquet
 - b) Ramillies
 - c) Blenheim

d) Oudenarde

5. had turned bloody by the summer of 1775, but aside from minor skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, the colonials had yet to test their mettle against the British Army.

a) The American Revolution

b) The Spanish Revolution

c) The French Revolution

d) The German Revolution

6. Compared to 400 killed or wounded for the colonials, the Redcoats sustained more than 1,000 casualties, and their heavy losses forced them to scrap plans to seize another piece of high ground on the outskirts of

a) Charlestown

b) Chelsea

c) Worcester

d) Boston

7. The single bloodiest day of Napoleon Bonaparte's military career unfolded on , when the French emperor was in the midst of his doomed invasion of Russia.

a) September 7, 1512

b) September 7, 1612

c) September 7, 1712

d) September 7, 1812

8. But when the French neared the small village of Borodino, Russian commander finally turned his army around, constructed fortifications and prepared to make his stand.

a) Peter the Great

b) G. A. Potemkin

c) A.V. Suvorov

d) M. Kutuzov

9. Few Civil War battles demonstrate General Robert E. Lee's tactical genius more than his May 1863 victory at, Virginia.

a) Battle of Fort Sumter.

b) Battle at Chancellorsville

c) Battle of Ball's Bluff

d) Battle of Belmont

10. Despite being outnumbered 2-to-1 by General troops, Lee took a huge gamble—and disregarded all military doctrine—by twice dividing his forces and taking the fight to the enemy.

a) John E. Wool's

b) John Garland's

c) Joseph Hooker's

d) Winfield Scott's

UNIT II

7 Brilliant Military Retreats

<https://www.history.com/news/7-brilliant-military-retreats>

1. George Washington's Escape from New York



Continental troops retreating under cover of darkness.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Less than two months after the July 1776 signing of the Declaration of Independence, General George Washington's Continental Army was in a fight for its life. The Patriots had failed to check a British amphibious attack on Long Island, and following a disastrous defeat at the Battle of Brooklyn, some 9,000 Americans were pinned against the East River. While British General Sir William Howe settled in for a siege, Washington ordered his men to round up all the flat-bottomed boats they could find. As drenching rains fell on the night of August 29, he used his hastily assembled flotilla to silently ferry unit after unit across the river to the safety of Manhattan. The regiment of Massachusetts fishermen that manned the boats used rags to muffle the sound of their oars, and campfires were left burning to deceive the British.

Many Continentals had still yet to be evacuated from Brooklyn by sunrise, but luckily for Washington, a dense fog rolled in and masked the final stages of the withdrawal. By the time the British finally realized what was happening, all 9,000 colonists had slipped away along with most of their equipment and artillery. "In the history of warfare I do not recollect a more fortunate retreat," Continental officer Benjamin Tallmadge later wrote.

- 1) relating to vehicles that operate both on land and in water;
- 2) extremely bad or unsuccessful;
- 3) to hold someone or something firmly in the same position or place;
- 4) to find and gather together a group of people, animals, or things;
- 5) making someone or something extremely wet;
- 6) a large group of boats or small ships;
- 7) to carry people or things a short distance from one place to another in a boat or other vehicle;
- 8) to make a sound quieter and less clear;

- 9) a long pole with a wide, flat part at one end, used for rowing a boat;
10) the process or action of a military force moving out of an area.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When was General George Washington's Continental Army in a fight for its life?
2. What did Washington order his men to do while British General Sir William Howe settled in for a siege?
3. What happened on the night of August 29?
4. Why were campfires left burning?
5. What did Continental officer Benjamin Tallmadge write about the retreat?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The March of the Ten Thousand



The Ten Thousands in battle against the Persians.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Ten Thousand were a band of Greek mercenaries hired by the Persian prince Cyrus the Younger to wage a civil war against his brother, King Artaxerxes II. The soldiers of fortune arrived near modern-day Baghdad in 401 B.C. and fought valiantly at the Battle of Cunaxa, but after Cyrus was killed, they were left stranded on enemy turf. The historian and soldier Xenophon later described their flight to safety in his legendary work "Anabasis." Rather than turning on one another or surrendering, the gang of toughs elected new leaders and began an epic fighting retreat out of Persia, often doing battle by day and traveling by night. The 1,500-mile journey pitted them against bands of hostile natives and a bitterly cold winter, but after nine months of running they finally sighted the Black Sea to celebratory cries of "Thalatta! Thalatta!" ("The sea! The

sea!") Amazingly, more than three-quarters of the original mercenary army later returned home to Greece.

1) a group of people who share the same interests or beliefs, or who have joined together for a special purpose;

2) a soldier who fights for any country or group that pays them;

3) an extremely large amount of money;

4) unable to leave somewhere because of a problem such as not having any transport or money ;

5) a surface layer of land consisting of grass and the earth in which its roots grow;

6) of a person, able to deal with difficult situations and not be easily defeated, frightened or upset;

7) used to describe events that happen over a long period and involve a lot of action and difficulty;

8) relating to the first people to live in an area;

9) to suddenly see something or someone;

10) done in order to celebrate a particular event or occasion.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who were the Ten Thousand, a band of Greek mercenaries hired by?

2. When did the soldiers of fortune arrive near modern-day Baghdad?

3. Did they fight valiantly at the Battle of Cunaxa?

4. Why did the gang of toughs elect new leaders and begin an epic fighting retreat out of Persia,

5. When did they finally sight the Black Sea?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Allied Evacuation of Gallipoli



Allied troops at Anzac Cove during the Gallipoli campaign. (Credit: Hulton Archive/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In April 1915, British, French, Australian and New Zealand forces launched an amphibious invasion of the Ottoman Empire via the Gallipoli Peninsula. Their landings were met with fierce resistance from Gallipoli's Turkish defenders, and most of the Allied troops were unable to advance more than a few hundred yards past their beachheads. The campaign soon settled into a trench warfare stalemate. By the time the Allies finally began an evacuation in December 1915, they had suffered over 200,000 casualties.

The Gallipoli invasion had been one of World War I's great blunders, but the retreat was a stroke of genius. As part of a multi-phase operation, troops were quietly ferried off the beaches right under the Turks' noses. Extra tents and cooking fires were used to give the impression of larger numbers, and empty equipment boxes were left on the beach to convince the enemy that nothing had been removed. Near the end of the evacuation, some soldiers even covered their getaway with so-called "drip guns"—phantom rifles rigged with strings and water weights to make them fire automatically. The subterfuge worked to perfection. Despite early predictions that a retreat would cost them half their troops, the Allies escaped Gallipoli with only a handful of casualties.

1) a planned group of especially political, business, or military activities that are intended to achieve a particular aim;

2) to begin, or to introduce a new plan;

3) an occasion when an army or country uses force to enter and take control of another country;

4) a long piece of land that sticks out from a larger area of land into the sea or into a lake;

5) an area of land near the sea or a river that an attacking army has taken control of and from where it can move forward into enemy country;

6) a situation in which nothing can change or no action can be taken;

7) the act of moving people from a dangerous place to somewhere safe;

8) to persuade someone or make someone certain;

9) a trick or a dishonest way of achieving something;

10) a statement about what you think will happen in the future.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did British, French, Australian and New Zealand forces launch an amphibious invasion of the Ottoman Empire via the Gallipoli Peninsula?

2. How far were most of the Allied troops able to advance?

3. How many casualties had the Allies suffered by the time they finally began an evacuation in December 1915?

4. How were the troops ferried off the beaches?

5. What did some soldiers do near the end of the evacuation?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Flight of the Nez Perce



Chief Joseph (Credit: GraphicaArtis/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1877, the United States government seized the ancestral lands of the Nez Perce Indians and ordered them to move to a reservation in Idaho. A band led by the charismatic Chief Joseph reluctantly complied, but after a group of disgruntled warriors killed several white settlers, the tribe found itself at war with the U.S. Army. What followed was one of the greatest fighting retreats in military history. Hoping to find sanctuary in Canada, the Nez Perce led their pursuers on a 1,400-mile chase across Idaho, Wyoming and Montana. Despite numbering just 700—only around 200 of whom were warriors—they outmaneuvered or defeated some 2,000 U.S. cavalymen in multiple battles and skirmishes. General William Tecumseh Sherman later noted that the Indians “fought with almost scientific skill, using advance and rear guards, skirmish lines and field fortifications.” Finally, after 15 weeks on the run, the Nez Perce were cornered after October 1877’s Battle of Bear Paw and forcibly moved to a reservation. They were just 40 miles from the Canadian border. “My heart is sick and sad,” Chief Joseph said in a famous surrender speech. “From where the sun now stands, I will fight no more forever.”

- 1) relating to members of your family from the past;
- 2) an area of land made available for a particular group of people to live in;
- 3) a person who attracts, influences, and inspires people by his/her personal qualities;
- 4) in a way that shows that you are not willing to do something and are therefore slow to do it;
- 5) unhappy, annoyed, and disappointed about something;
- 6) protection or a safe place, especially for someone or something being chased or hunted;
- 7) someone who is chasing you;
- 8) a soldier in an army who fights in a tank, or (especially in the past) on a horse;

9) buildings, walls, or ditches that are built to protect a place and make it more difficult to attack;

10) the act of stopping fighting and officially admitting defeat.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did the United States government do in 1877?

2. When did the tribe find itself at war with the U.S. Army?

3. Why did the Nez Perce lead their pursuers on a 1,400-mile chase across Idaho, Wyoming and Montana?

4. What did General William Tecumseh Sherman later note about the Indians?

5. When were the Nez Perce cornered and forcibly moved to a reservation?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Dunkirk Evacuation



Evacuation of Dunkirk. (Credit: Imperial War Museum)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

World War II's "Miracle of [Dunkirk](#)" began on May 27, 1940, when the first of some 338,000 British, French and Belgian troops were evacuated from the French coast. The Allies had retreated to the sea a few days earlier after failing to block Germany's blitzkrieg invasion of France and the Low Countries. They were cornered and facing imminent destruction, but when Adolf Hitler unwisely halted his Panzer tanks' advance, the British Expeditionary Force was able to fortify the port of Dunkirk and initiate a frantic retreat codenamed "Operation Dynamo."

As the Royal Air Force dueled with the Luftwaffe in the skies overhead, the British Admiralty cobbled together a fleet of over 900 Navy ships, merchant vessels, ferries, and paddle steamers and began transporting soldiers to the English mainland under heavy fire. Scores of civilians also chipped in by piloting fishing boats and pleasure craft across the heavily mined English Channel. The British initially feared it would only be possible to retrieve 45,000 men over the course of 48 hours, but the ragtag armada eventually spent nine days executing the largest sea evacuation in history. Allied losses were still sobering—many

ships were sunk and some 40,000 men were left behind and captured—but those that escaped later played a crucial role in the continued fight against Nazi Germany.

- 1) the land next to or close to the sea;
- 2) a fast and intense military attack that takes the enemy by surprise and is intended to achieve a very quick victory;
- 3) coming or likely to happen very soon;
- 4) to (cause to) stop moving or doing something or happening;
- 5) to make something stronger, especially in order to protect it;
- 6) the government department that controls the British navy;
- 7) consisting of parts or pieces that are in no particular order or system;
- 8) a large group of armed ships that fight wars at sea;
- 9) to (cause something or someone to) go down below the surface or to the bottom of a liquid or soft substance;
- 10) extremely important or necessary.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did World War II's "Miracle of Dunkirk" begin?
2. When was the British Expeditionary Force able to fortify the port of Dunkirk and initiate a frantic retreat codenamed "Operation Dynamo"?
3. Where did the Royal Air Force duel with the Luftwaffe?
4. How did the British Admiralty transport soldiers to the English mainland under heavy fire?
5. Were allied losses really sobering?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The U.N. Retreat from Chosin Reservoir



View of U.S. troops as they march south from Koto-ri during the Battle of Chosin Reservoir, December 1950. (Credit: PhotoQuest/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

“Retreat, hell! We’re not retreating, we’re just advancing in a different direction.” That was how Major General Oliver P. Smith supposedly described the Korean War’s Battle of Chosin Reservoir, where a United Nations detachment made a 78-mile fighting withdrawal along a muddy mountain corridor. The force of U.S. Marines, Army troops and British Royal Marines had been ambushed and surrounded in late-November 1950 by a much larger Chinese army. Led by Smith’s 1st Marine Division, the allies broke out of the enemy encirclement and began a two-week trek to the seaport of Hungnam. Along with enduring arctic conditions—temperatures dropped to 34 degrees below zero—they also battled the Chinese at places like Hell Fire Valley and Funchilin Pass, where combat engineers famously assembled an airdropped bridge after the original one was destroyed. The veterans of the “frozen Chosin” later reached the evacuation point at Hungnam in mid-December. By then, the retreating U.N. army had suffered 17,000 casualties compared to a staggering 60,000 for the Chinese.

1) used to show that you do not believe that something you have been told is true;

2) a group of soldiers who are separated from the main group in order to perform a particular duty;

3) the process or action of a military force moving out of an area;

4) a part of a country's military forces that takes part especially in operations on land that begin from the sea;

5) to suddenly attack someone after hiding and waiting for them;

6) a long walk over land such as hills, mountains, or forests;

7) very cold;

8) an area of low land between hills or mountains, often with a river running through it;

9) a path or road between or over mountains;

10) the act of bringing supplies or equipment by dropping them from aircraft.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did Major General Oliver P. Smith supposedly describe the Korean War’s Battle of Chosin Reservoir?

2. Did a United Nations detachment make a 78-mile fighting withdrawal along a muddy mountain corridor of Chosin Reservoir?

3. Which forces had been ambushed and surrounded in late-November 1950 by a much larger Chinese army?

4. Did the allies manage to break out of the enemy encirclement?

5. Did the veterans of the “frozen Chosin” reach the evacuation point at Hungnam in mid-December or January?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. Mao Zedong's "Long March"



*Painting depicting Mao Zedong during the Long March.
(Credit: DeAgostini/Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Chinese Communist Party owes its early survival to a retreat. The exodus began in October 1934, when the First Red Army became trapped at its base in Jiangxi Province by Nationalist forces under Chiang Kai-shek. Once the situation grew desperate, future party leader Mao Zedong and some 86,000 other Communists broke out of the encirclement and fled west. The early stages of their retreat were dogged by Nationalist ground attacks and bombings. Nearly half the Red Army was annihilated in a matter of weeks, but the survivors continued the flight for a full year, braving starvation, disease and perilous mountain crossings before finally arriving at new headquarters in the northern province of Shaanxi. Mao elbowed his way into power during the journey, and he later used the legend of the "Long March" to cement his position and recruit scores of Chinese to the Communist cause. Historians still debate certain aspects of the ordeal, but there's no doubt it was brutal. According to some estimates, nine out of every 10 people who began the retreat perished along the way.

- 1) introducing the reason for something;
- 2) the fact of a person, organization, etc. continuing to live or exist;
- 3) to be unable to move or escape from a place or situation;
- 4) very serious or bad;
- 5) to follow someone closely and continuously;
- 6) to destroy something or someone completely;
- 7) suffering or death caused by lack of food;
- 8) extremely dangerous;
- 9) a very unpleasant and painful or difficult experience;
- 10) to die, especially in an accident or by being killed, or to be destroyed.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What does the Chinese Communist Party owe its early survival to?
2. Who did the First Red Army become trapped at its base in Jiangxi Province by in October 1934?
3. Did future party leader Mao Zedong and some 86,000 other Communists break out of the encirclement?
4. How did Mao use the legend of the “Long March”?
5. Do historians still debate certain aspects of the ordeal?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Сто років тому: останні бої армії УНР та відступ за Збруч

<https://www.radiosvoboda.org>



Сто років тому, 21–23 листопада 1920 року, армія УНР під ударами більшовицьких військ відступила за Збруч. Нині ця річка розмежовує Хмельницьку й Тернопільську області, а тоді була прикордонною. За Збручем українці були роззброєні та інтерновані поляками. Ця подія ознаменувала завершення основного етапу національно-визвольної боротьби й Української революції 1917–1921 років.

Річка Збруч була прикордонною між тогочасною Польщею та УНР. І була визнана кордоном згідно з Варшавськими домовленостями. Але мусимо пам'ятати, якою ціною та яким чином Галичина була завойована поляками та яким чином були укладені Варшавські угоди. Вони мали для української сторони вимушений характер. Українська Народна Республіка була змушена погодитися на ті умови, які диктували поляки, тобто кордон був встановлений внаслідок важких обставин. Потрібно наголосити на тому, що Пілсудський всупереч зобов'язанням, які взяла на себе Польська держава, продовжував допомагати армії УНР. Він був не тільки тимчасовим керівником держави, тобто фігура політична, а ще й верховним головнокомандувачем, тобто фігура військова. Як фігура політична він був змушений погодитися з тим перемир'ям та припиненням допомоги на

політичній арені. А як верховний головнокомандувач – навпаки, продовжував допомогу, але трохи іншими засобами.

Наприклад, за його вказівкою була сформована добровольча дивізія, куди вступали поляки, уродженці України. Вони мали право воювати на боці УНР, адже Україна це їхня батьківщина, й вони могли продовжувати боротьбу за її свободу. Пілсудський зробив багато для того, щоб армія УНР отримали нових союзників. Звісно, не таких потужних, якими було військо польське, але це були досить значні сили на той момент: козака дивізія осавула Яковлева та Третя російська армія генерала Бориса Пермикіна.

Козача дивізія увійшла до складу, а армія генерала Пермикіна підпорядковувалася командуванню української армії. І тут Пілсудський відіграв велику посередницьку роль. Крім того, Польща не припиняла постачання українського війська продуктами харчування, одягом, боєприпасами та зброєю. Тобто Пілсудський намагався робити все, що він міг робити в межах повноважень верховного головнокомандувача.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a,b,c, or d.

1. Less than two months after the signing of the Declaration of Independence, General George Washington's Continental Army was in a fight for its life.

- a) September 1779
- b) August 1778
- c) June 1777
- d) July 1776

2. Many Continentals had still yet to be evacuated from Brooklyn by sunrise, but luckily for Washington, and masked the final stages of the withdrawal.

- a) a thunderstorm began
- b) a dense fog rolled in
- c) a volcano erupted
- d) a tornado approached

3. The Ten Thousand were a band of hired by the Persian prince Cyrus the Younger to wage a civil war against his brother, King Artaxerxes II.

- a) Greek mercenaries
- b) Roman mercenaries
- c) Greek sailors
- d) Roman sailors

4. The 1,500-mile journey pitted them against bands of hostile natives and a bitterly cold winter, but after nine months of running they finally sighted to celebratory cries of "Thalatta! Thalatta!" ("The sea! The sea!")

- a) the Red Sea
- b) the Mediterranean Sea
- c) the Black Sea

d) the Adriatic Sea

5. The Gallipoli invasion had been one of great blunders, but the retreat was a stroke of genius.

a) World War I's

b) World War II's

c) Civil War's

d) South African War's

6. By the time the Allies finally began an evacuation in December 1915, they had suffered over

a) 10,000 casualties.

b) 20,000 casualties.

c) 100,000 casualties.

d) 200,000 casualties.

7. In 1877, the United States government seized the ancestral lands of the Nez Perce Indians and ordered them to move to a reservation in

a) Idaho

b) Oklahoma

c) Virginia

d) Texas

8. Finally, after 15 weeks on the run, the Nez Perce were cornered after October 1877's and forcibly moved to a reservation.

a) Battle of Little Bighorn

b) Battle of Wounded Knee

c) Jamestown Massacre

d) Battle of Bear Paw

9. World War II's "Miracle of Dunkirk" began on May 27, 1940, when the first of some 338,000 British, French and Belgian troops were evacuated from

a) the British coast

b) the French coast

c) the Belgian coast

d) the Dutch coast

10. The Allies had retreated a few days earlier after failing to block Germany's blitzkrieg invasion of France and the Low Countries.

a) to the sea

b) to the desert

c) to the mountains

d) to the swamp

11. "Retreat, hell! We're not retreating, we're just advancing in a different direction." That was how Major General Oliver P. Smith supposedly described Battle of Chosin Reservoir, where a United Nations detachment made a 78-mile fighting withdrawal along a muddy mountain corridor.

a) the Chinese War's

b) the Vietnamese War's

c) the Japanese War's

d) the Korean War's

12. The force of U.S. Marines, Army troops and British Royal Marines had been ambushed and surrounded in late-November 1950 by a much larger

- a) Chinese army.
- b) Vietnamese army.
- c) Japanese army.
- d) Korean army.

13. The Chinese Communist Party owes its early survival to a retreat. The exodus began in, when the First Red Army became trapped at its base in Jiangxi Province by Nationalist forces under Chiang Kai-shek.

- a) October 1944
- b) October 1934
- c) October 1924
- d) October 1914

14. Mao elbowed his way into power during the journey, and he later used the legend of the to cement his position and recruit scores of Chinese to the Communist cause.

- a) "Long March"
- b) "Hard March"
- c) "Short March"
- d) "Revolutionary March"

UNIT III

7 Unusual Military Units

<https://www.history.com/news/7-unusual-military-units>

1. The Potsdam Giants



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Armies have always sought to bring the biggest and strongest soldiers into their ranks, but King Frederick William I of Prussia turned it into an obsession. In the early 18th century, the military-loving monarch tried to assemble the tallest troops in Europe into an elite regiment nicknamed the “Potsdam Giants.” Though they never saw combat, these enormous grenadiers grew to become the most impressive collection of big men this side of a pro basketball team. Several members were seven-footers, and one Swedish recruit was said to stand eight and a half feet tall.

King Frederick was constantly on the lookout for potential Potsdam Giants, and he was willing to beg, borrow and steal to get them. He spent a fortune hiring outsized mercenaries and buying tall soldiers off other militaries, and instructed his agents to shanghai exceptionally tall civilians and conscript them into the unit. In a bizarre attempt to breed future recruits, he even compelled his largest troops to marry and have children with tall women. King Frederick derived great joy from the giants—he was known to have them march through his bedroom to cheer him up when he was ill—but they were also a significant drain on royal coffers. After he died in 1740, his son disbanded the unit and used the savings to fund four additional regiments of normal-sized soldiers.

- 1) an extreme unhealthy interest in something or worry about something, which stops you from thinking about anything else;
- 2) a large group of soldiers combining several battalions;
- 3) to give an informal name for someone or something;
- 4) (formerly) a member of a special formation, usually selected for strength and height;
- 5) a person who has recently joined an organization or an army;
- 6) to force someone to do something or go somewhere;

- 7) to force someone to serve in an army or one of a country's armed forces;
- 8) something that uses more of your energy, money, or time than you want to give;
- 9) the money that an organization has in its bank accounts and available to spend;
- 10) to dismiss (a military force) from service.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did King Frederick William I of Prussia turn into an obsession?
2. How was the elite regiment of the tallest troops in Europe nicknamed?
3. Who was King Frederick constantly on the lookout for?
4. Did the Giants march through King Frederick's bedroom to cheer him up when he was ill?
5. What did his son do after the death of his father?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Viking Berserkers



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

According to Norse lore, berserkers were a feared class of Viking warriors known for fighting with a hysterical, wild-eyed fury. Neglecting chain mail or other armor, these imposing shock troops supposedly went into battle wearing bear and wolf pelts or even bare-chested. Once in combat, they killed, raped and pillaged with reckless abandon, to the point that some Norse sagas claimed they could physically transform into ferocious beasts. The berserkers' skill in battle made them much sought after as soldiers and royal bodyguards, but they were also feared and even hated by their fellow Vikings. They could become so drunk with rage that they would inadvertently turn on their friends, and when not in combat they often raped and murdered their allies to satisfy their bloodlust.

Just how the berserkers tapped into their famous anger is uncertain. They may have been connected to secretive cults devoted to the Norse god Odin, so their rituals were likely mysterious even to their contemporaries. Most scholars believe they simply worked themselves into a hypnotic trance, but others have

speculated that they may have gotten blind drunk or consumed a certain species of hallucinogenic mushroom.

1) knowledge or information about a subject, for example nature or magic, that is not written down but is passed from person to person;

2) a member of a class of ancient Norse warriors who worked themselves into a frenzy before battle and fought with insane fury and courage;

3) extreme anger;

4) the skin and fur of a dead animal, or the skin with the fur removed;

5) to steal something from a place or a person by using violence, especially during war;

6) in a completely uncontrolled way;

7) a person or group of people whose job is to protect someone from attack;

8) enjoyment of being violent or watching other people being violent;

9) a temporary mental condition in which someone is not completely conscious of and/or not in control of himself or herself;

10) causing hallucinations.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who were berserkers according to Norse lore?

2. How did these imposing shock troops supposedly go into battle?

3. What did Norse sagas claim berserkers could physically transform into?

4. May they have been connected to secretive cults?

5. What do most scholars think about berserkers' behavior?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The 10,000 Immortals



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

One of the most feared and famous armies of antiquity, the Immortals were a 10,000-strong fighting force associated with the Achaemenid Empire of

Persia. These spear-toting warriors first appear in the Greek chronicler Herodotus's account of the Persian invasion of Greece, where they are described as "the best...and most magnificently equipped" soldiers operating under the command of King Xerxes. According to Herodotus, the nickname "Immortals" arose because the unit always had the same number of troops. If even a single Immortal fell sick or died in battle, he was immediately replaced so that the unit's strength was "never more nor less than 10,000."

While the Persian army was a multinational force, only those with Persian or Medic ancestry were allowed to serve in the Immortals, and they were adorned with gold jewelry to signify their high status. The 10,000 primarily served as the king's personal bodyguards, but they also took to the field in times of war. Their most famous action came during the Persian victory at the Battle of Thermopylae in 480 B.C., when they bypassed a blocked path and ambushed the Spartan-led Greeks from the rear.

- 1) the distant past (= a long time ago), especially before the sixth century;
- 2) someone who is so famous that they are remembered for a long time after they are dead;
- 3) a weapon consisting of a pole with a sharp, usually metal, point at one end, that is either thrown or held in the hand;
- 4) carrying the thing specified;
- 5) a person who writes descriptions of historical events as they happen;
- 6) to add something decorative to a person or thing;
- 7) decorative objects worn on your clothes or body that are usually made from valuable metals, such as gold and silver, and precious stones;
- 8) an accepted or official position, especially in a social group;
- 9) to avoid something by going around it;
- 10) the back part of something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What empire were one of the most feared and famous armies of antiquity, the Immortals associated with?
2. How did the Greek chronicler Herodotus describe these spear-toting warriors?
3. What happened if even a single Immortal fell sick or died in battle?
4. Was the Immortal army a multinational force?
5. What do you know about the Persian victory at the Battle of Thermopylae in 480 B.C.?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Ghost Army



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the summer of 1944, the U.S. Army gathered a select group of artists, designers and sound effects experts for a particularly unusual task: building a phantom army. Inspired by a trick originally pulled by British forces in North Africa, the 23rd Headquarters Special Troops—better known as the “Ghost Army”—used inflatable rubber tanks and jeeps, sound effects and other subterfuge to deceive the Germans about the actual size and location of Allied forces. The unit took part in more than 20 missions, many of which employed artistry and illusion on a scale that rivaled a Hollywood movie. Painters and illustrators designed fake uniforms and dummy vehicles; sound engineers broadcasted phony radio traffic and blasted sound effects that mimicked the racket of an army on the move; and actors spread misinformation in the hope it would be picked up by Nazi spies. When the ruse worked, the unit was able to give the impression that U.S. forces were larger and more mobile than was actually the case. During one mission, the Ghost Army even plugged a hole in General George Patton’s lines for several days without being discovered.

The Ghost Army’s actions were kept under wraps for several decades after the end of World War II, and it wasn’t until 1996 that its unusual contribution to the war effort finally became public knowledge. By then, many of its members had gone on to distinguished careers in the art and design industries. Among others, fashion designer Bill Blass and artists Ellsworth Kelly and Arthur Singer were all veterans of the unit.

1) the spirit of a dead person, sometimes represented as a pale, almost transparent image of that person that some people believe appears to people who are alive;

2) a person with a high level of knowledge or skill relating to a particular subject or activity;

3) an object that has to be filled with air before you can use it;

4) an elastic, waterproof substance made either from the juice of a tree that grows in hotter parts of the world or artificially;

5) a trick or a dishonest way of achieving something;

6) great skill in creating or performing something, such as in writing, music, sport, etc.;

7) to send out sound or pictures that are carried over distances using radio waves;

8) a trick intended to deceive someone;

9) to block it with something;

10) material that is used to cover or protect objects.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Why did the U.S. Army gather a select group of artists, designers and sound effects experts in the summer of 1944?

2. What were the 23rd Headquarters Special Troops inspired by?

3. Why did the “Ghost Army” use inflatable rubber tanks and jeeps, sound effects and other subterfuge?

4. What impression was the unit able to give when the ruse worked?

5. When did the Ghost Army plug a hole in General George Patton’s lines?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Gurkhas



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The history of the Gurkhas stretches back to 1814, when British colonial forces clashed with the city-state of Gorkha during the Anglo-Nepalese War. Though significantly outgunned, the Nepalese “Gurkha” warriors inflicted heavy casualties on the British and eventually forced them into a peace treaty. Impressed by the Gurkhas grit and tenacity, the British included a stipulation in the peace deal allowing the Nepalese fighters to serve as volunteer soldiers in the East India Company’s army.

Gurkhas were later incorporated into the regular British Army, and they went on to serve in nearly every major British military action of the 19th and 20th centuries. Famous for their curved kukri knives and the motto “Better to die than be a coward,” they earned a reputation for their loyalty and extreme bravery under fire. Gurkhas won nearly 2,000 citations for valor during World

War I alone, and 13 have been awarded the Victoria Cross—Britain’s highest military honor. To this day, the British Army handpicks around 200 new Gurkhas each year from a pool of nearly 30,000 Nepalese youths. Recruits go through a grueling screening process that includes a long-distance run through the Himalayas while wearing a wicker basket filled with 70 pounds of rocks.

- 1) to fight or argue;
- 2) to win a war or fight by having more weapons than the other side;
- 3) to force someone to experience something very unpleasant;
- 4) a written agreement between two or more countries, formally approved and signed by their leaders;
- 5) the determination to continue what you are doing;
- 6) something that must be done, and which is stated as part of an agreement, law, or rule
- 7) a knife with a curved blade that broadens towards the point, esp as used by Gurkhas;
- 8) a person who is not brave and is too eager to avoid danger, difficulty, or pain;
- 9) great courage;
- 10) thin dry branches or reeds that are woven together.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the history of the Gurkhas begin?
2. Did the Nepalese “Gurkha” warriors eventually force the British into a peace treaty?
3. What stipulation did the British include a in the peace deal?
4. Were Gurkhas later incorporated into the regular British Army?
5. What was the motto of Gurkhas?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Mormon Battalion



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Mormon Battalion has the unusual honor of being the only unit in U.S. Army history comprised entirely of Latter Day Saints. The faith-based fighting force originally came about in July 1846 after negotiations between Brigham Young's church leaders and the U.S. military. While the Mormons hoped the battalion would pave the way for their exodus to the American West by providing equipment and soldiers' pay, President James K. Polk saw it as a means to help make the Latter Day Saints friendly allies of the U.S government.

Although it never saw combat, the 500-man Mormon Battalion became one of the most well traveled units in American history. The men began their service by making a grueling march out of Iowa and through hostile Indian land to Santa Fe. From there, they proceeded through the wilds of Arizona and into southern California, where they performed garrison duty around San Diego and Los Angeles. The short-lived battalion was mustered out of service in July 1847, at which point most of its members headed north to join their fellow Mormon pioneers in the Utah Territory.

1) a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints, formed in the US by Joseph Smith in 1830;

2) a military unit consisting of three or more companies;

3) (the title given to) a person who has received an official honour from the Christian, especially the Roman Catholic, Church for having lived in a good and holy way;

4) the process of discussing something with someone in order to reach an agreement with them, or the discussions themselves;

5) a situation in which a lot of people leave a particular place at the same time;

6) extremely tiring and difficult, and demanding great effort and determination;

7) difficult or not suitable for living or growing;

8) not used by people for farming, building etc;

9) to get enough courage, confidence, support etc to do something, especially with difficulty;

10) a person who is one of the first people to do something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Why is the Mormon Battalion considered to be a unique one?

2. When did the faith-based fighting force originally come about?

3. What was President James K. Polk's attitude to the Mormon Battalion?

4. Did the 500-man Mormon Battalion become one of the most experienced units in American history?

5. When was the short-lived battalion mustered out of service?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Monuments Men



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives section—better known as the “Monuments Men”—was a special unit tasked with preserving Europe’s cultural heritage during World War II. This small, handpicked collection of art historians, museum curators and scholars originally ventured to the front lines to help prevent historically important buildings and other landmarks from becoming casualties of war. One of their most important tasks was ensuring that culturally significant structures were not unintentionally destroyed during the Allied push into Europe. Members of the unit designed special maps instructing pilots on which areas to avoid on their bombing runs, and took steps to preserve and restore landmarks that had already been damaged.

Near the end of the war, the unit’s focus changed to tracking down and recovering priceless paintings and sculptures looted by the Nazis. As Hitler’s regime crumbled, the Monuments Men uncovered thousands of artworks secreted away in castles and salt mines and worked to return them to their rightful owners. Among others, the unit rescued masterpieces by luminaries such as Rembrandt, Da Vinci, Michelangelo, Vermeer and Botticelli.

1) a collection of historical records relating to a place, organization, or family;

2) the history, traditions, practices, etc. of a particular country, society, or company that exist from the past and continue to be important;

3) a building where objects of historical, scientific, or artistic interest are kept

4) a person in charge of a museum, library, etc.;

5) to risk going somewhere or doing something that might be dangerous or unpleasant, or to risk saying something that might be criticized;

6) a person injured or killed in a serious accident or war;

7) to officially tell someone what to do;

8) (usually of large numbers of people during a violent event) to steal from shops and houses;

9) to lose power, become weak, or fail;

10) a person who is famous and important in a particular area of activity.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was the main task of a special unit the “Monuments Men”?
2. Why did this small, handpicked collection of art historians, museum curators and scholars originally venture to the front lines?
3. Did members of the unit design special maps?
4. What did they try to preserve and restore?
5. How did the unit’s focus change near the end of the war?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

«Дельта» (Delta Force) – найбільш елітний підрозділ сил спеціальних операцій США

<https://milnavigator.com.ua/delta-delta-force-naibilsh-elitnyi-pidrozd/>



«Дельта» — один з найбільш засекречених підрозділів першого рівня таємності сил спеціальних операцій Збройних сил США, пріоритетним завданням якого є боротьба з тероризмом та виконання задач спеціальних операцій. Спецпідрозділ носить загальнозживану назву «Дельта», та офіційно знаходиться під безпосереднім керівництвом Міністерства оборони США, як Бойова виконавча група. Це формування є одним з найбільш елітних підрозділів сил спеціальних операцій США, які об’єднуються під керівництвом Командування спеціальних операцій США у складі сухопутного компоненту Об’єданого Командування спеціальних операцій.

Бойовий підрозділ «Дельта», що призначався для виконання спеціальних завдань, які не мали нічого спільного із звичайною тактикою дій в діяльності ані військових, ані поліцейських, був сформований після низки гучних інцидентів у 1970-х, пов’язаних з терористичними атаками того часу. Розмова про створення особливого формування для виконання так званих «чорних» завдань та задач іншого роду циркулювала серед політичного та військового керівництва країни

тривалий час ще з початку 1960-х років, проте лише із зростанням терористичної загрози плани перетворилися на реальні дії.

Одним з ключових ініціаторів та засновників «Дельти» став офіцер сил спеціальних операцій армії США Чарльз Беквіт, який був відраджений до складу британської спеціальної повітряної служби. Після отримання багатої практики Беквіт повернувся до США та запропонував деталізовано опрацьований рапорт загроз для армії США у випадку, якщо американці не будуть мати спеціального формування подібного до SAS. На той час основний наголос у підготовці сил спеціальних операцій сухопутних військ робився на опрацюванні варіантів ведення бойових дій нетрадиційними методами у звичайній війні. Беквіт виступив з критикою, наголошуючи на тому, що армії потрібні «не лише вчителі, а й виконавці».

Він запропонував створення високомобільних, повністю автономних невеликих бойових груп, підготовлених у самому широкому спектрі бойових дій для безпосереднього виконання прямих акцій та контртерористичної боротьби. Незважаючи на усі намагання Беквіта запевнити високопосадовців у крайній необхідності формування даного підрозділу, він зіштовхнувся з відвертою або прихованою протидією керівництва, яке просто не бажало створювати нову структуру поза межами існуючих Сил спеціальних операцій та змінювати самі методи їх підготовки. Врешті-решт, у середині 1970-х на фоні постійно зростаючої терористичної загрози Беквіту вдалося добитися рішення про початок формування підрозділу.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a,b,c, or d.

1. Armies have always sought to bring the biggest and strongest soldiers into their ranks, butof Prussia turned it into an obsession.

- a)) King John Sigismund
- b)) King Frederick William I
- c)) King Albert Frederick
- d)) King Frederick William IV

2. was constantly on the lookout for potential Potsdam Giants, and he was willing to beg, borrow and steal to get them.

- a)) King John Sigismund
- b)) King Frederick William I
- c)) King Albert Frederick
- d)) King Frederick William IV

3. According to , berserkers were a feared class of Viking warriors known for fighting with a hysterical, wild-eyed fury.

- a)) Norse lore

- b) Norse literature
- c) Norse arts
- d) Norse music

4. Once in combat, they killed, raped and pillaged with reckless abandon, to the point that some claimed they could physically transform into ferocious beasts.

- a) Norse ballads
- b) Norse poems
- c) Norse songs
- d) Norse sagas

5. The Immortals first appear in the Greek chronicler Herodotus's account of the Persian invasion of Greece, where they are described as "the best...and most magnificently equipped" soldiers operating under the command of

- a) King Cambyses
- b) King Bardiya
- c) King Xerxes
- d) King Darius

6. Their most famous action came during the Persian victory at the in 480 B.C., when they bypassed a blocked path and ambushed the Spartan-led Greeks from the rear.

- a) Battle of Plataea
- b) Battle of Mycale
- c) Battle of Salamis
- d) Battle of Thermopylae

7. In the summer of 1944, the U.S. Army gathered a select group of artists, designers and sound effects experts for a particularly unusual task: building

- a) a phantom army
- b) a secret army
- c) a cavalry army
- d) a cyber army

8. Inspired by a trick originally pulled by British forces, the 23rd Headquarters Special Troops—better known as the "Ghost Army"—used inflatable rubber tanks and jeeps, sound effects and other subterfuge to deceive the Germans about the actual size and location of Allied forces.

- a) in South America
- b) in North America
- c) in South Africa
- d) in North Africa

9. The history of the Gurkhas stretches back to 1814, when clashed with the city-state of Gorkha during the Anglo-Nepalese War.

- a) Italian colonial forces
- b) Persian colonial forces
- c) British colonial forces
- d) German colonial forces

10. Gurkhas were later incorporated into the, and they went on to serve in nearly every major British military action of the 19th and 20th centuries.

- a) regular Italian Army
- b) regular Persian Army
- c) regular British Army
- d) regular German Army

11. While the Mormons hoped the battalion would pave the way for their exodus to the American West by providing equipment and soldiers' pay, saw it as a means to help make the Latter Day Saints friendly allies of the U.S government.

- a) President James K. Polk
- b) President Martin Van Buren
- c) President Zachary Taylor
- d) President Franklin Pierce

12. Although it never saw combat, the 500-man Mormon Battalion became one of the most well traveled units in American history. The men began their service by making a grueling march out of and through hostile Indian land to Santa Fe.

- a) Texas
- b) Iowa
- c) Idaho
- d) Utah

13. The Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives section—better known as the “Monuments Men”—was a special unit tasked with preserving Europe’s cultural heritage during

- a) the Civil War
- b) World War I
- c) World War II
- d) Cold War

14. One of their most important tasks was ensuring that culturally significant structures were not unintentionally destroyed during the Allied push into

- a) Africa
- b) America
- c) Asia
- d) Europe

UNIT IV

8 Legendary Battle Cries

<https://www.history.com/news/8-legendary-battle-cries>

1. "Remember the Alamo"



"The Fall of the Alamo"

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On February 23, 1836, Mexican General Santa Anna besieged Colonel William B. Travis and some 200 Texas independence fighters at a former Franciscan mission known as the Alamo. The Texans were outnumbered and outgunned, but they held out for 13 grueling days until March 6, when the Mexicans stormed the fort and killed nearly all its defenders. The defeat was catastrophic—Travis, James Bowie and famed frontiersman Davy Crockett all died—but the Texans' courage under fire helped galvanize their compatriots. General Sam Houston and others used the rallying cry "Remember the Alamo" to whet their troops' appetite for vengeance, and in April 1836, the Texans routed a superior Mexican army and captured Santa Anna at the Battle of San Jacinto. "Remember the Alamo" lived on even after the United States annexed Texas in 1845, and was later revived by U.S. troops during the Mexican-American War.

- 1) a man who lived on the American frontier, especially in the 19th century;
- 2) to cause someone to suddenly take action, especially by shocking or exciting them in some way;
- 3) someone who was born in or is a citizen of the same country as someone else;
- 4) a word or phrase used to unite people in support of an idea;
- 5) to increase someone's interest in and wish for something, usually by giving them a small experience of it
- 6) the punishing of someone for harming you or your friends or family, or the wish for such punishment to happen;
- 7) to defeat an enemy completely and force them to run away;
- 8) to take possession of an area of land or a country, usually by force or without permission;
- 9) to come or bring something back to life, health, existence, or use;
- 10) soldiers on duty in a large group.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did Mexican General Santa Anna besiege Colonel William B. Travis and some 200 Texas independence fighters at a former Franciscan mission known as the Alamo?

2. How long did they hold out?

3. What happened when the Mexicans stormed the fort?

4. Why was the defeat catastrophic?

5. What rallying cry did General Sam Houston and others use to whet their troops' appetite for vengeance?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Rebel Yell



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

“It was the ugliest sound that any mortal ever heard—even a mortal exhausted and unnerved by two days of hard fighting, without sleep, without rest, without food and without hope.” That was legendary writer and Union army veteran Ambrose Bierce’s description of the “rebel yell,” the notorious battle cry of Confederate forces during the Civil War. This banshee scream was the Confederacy’s calling card for most of the war, but its sound has long been the subject of debate. Later recordings of elderly Southern veterans seem to indicate that it was a shrill yelp that resembled the call of a coyote, though it may have varied from unit to unit. Whatever it sounded like, the yell was considered an indispensable tool on the battlefield. Lieutenant Colonel A.J.L. Fremantle, a British observer at Gettysburg, noted that, “Confederate officers declare that the rebel yell has a particular merit, and always produces a salutary and useful effect upon their adversaries. A corps is sometimes spoken of as a ‘good yelling regiment.’”

1) to shout or say something very loudly, especially because you are frightened, angry, or excited;

- 2) an ordinary person, rather than a god or a special, important, or powerful person;
- 3) someone who has been in the armed forces during a war;
- 4) famous for something bad;
- 5) a female spirit in traditional Irish stories whose crying sound tells you that someone in your family is going to die;
- 6) a loud, high sound you make when very frightened, excited, or angry;
- 7) not pleasant to hear; loud and high;
- 8) a sudden, short, high sound, like that made by a person or animal in pain;
- 9) a small wild animal like a dog that lives in North America;
- 10) causing improvement of behavior or character.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did the legendary writer and Union army veteran Ambrose Bierce’s describe the “rebel yell”?
2. What was the notorious battle cry of Confederate forces during the Civil War?
3. What did that shrill yelp resemble?
4. Was it the same in all units?
5. What did Lieutenant Colonel A.J.L. Fremantle, a British observer at Gettysburg, note?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Greek “Alala” and “Eleleu”



Credit: De Agostini Picture Library/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

When they marched toward their enemies in their organized phalanx formations, Ancient Greek troops typically belted out battle hymns, or “paeans,” designed to invoke the god Apollo and help calm their nerves. Once within striking distance, however, they would cease their singing and break into a full-throated battle cry of “Alala!” or “Eleleu!” while banging their weapons against

their shields to spook enemy horses. When voiced by thousands of spear-wielding hoplites, these cries were said to resemble the sound of flocks of screeching birds, and they were so well known that the ancient writer Pindar even addressed them in a 5th century B.C. poem. "Hear me, Alala," he wrote, "daughter of Ares, prelude of the spears, you to whom men fall as offerings for their homeland in death's holy sacrifice."

1) a large group of people standing very close to each other, usually for the purposes of defence or attack;

2) to sing or play a musical instrument very loudly;

3) a song of praise that Christians sing to God;

4) a happy song of praise, thanks, or victory;

5) to request help from someone, especially a god, when you want to improve a situation;

6) to stop something;

7) to frighten a person or animal;

8) (in ancient Greece) a heavily armed infantryman;

9) a group of sheep, goats, or birds;

10) something that comes before a more important event or action that introduces or prepares for it.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did Ancient Greek troops march toward their enemies?

2. What did Ancient Greek troops typically belt out?

3. Why did they break into a full-throated battle cry of "Alala!" or "Eleleu!" while banging their weapons against their shields?

4. What were these cries, when voiced by thousands of spear-wielding hoplites, said to resemble?

5. How did the ancient writer Pindar address these cries in the 5th century B.C?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. "There Is no Land for Us beyond the Volga."



Russian soldiers at Stalingrad. (Credit: German Federal Archives)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the summer of 1942, German forces closed in on the Soviet city of Stalingrad, an industrial hub nestled along the banks of the Volga River. The Nazis hoped to steamroll their way through the city in a matter of weeks, but they soon found themselves locked in a cataclysmic fight with the Soviet Red Army, which yielded ground reluctantly and only at great cost to the invaders. This was due in part to the brutal policies of Joseph Stalin, who instituted a “Not One Step Back” policy and executed thousands of his own men, but it was also thanks to the grit of the Soviet soldiers, who announced their intention to fight to the last with the rallying cry, “There is no land for us beyond the Volga.” The stalwart defenders endured months of frantic block-to-block combat until late-1942, when a Soviet counterattack encircled the Nazis and boxed them inside the city. The Germans surrendered only a few months later, sealing what many historians consider the most important Allied victory of World War II. The famous “no land beyond the Volga” battle cry was later inscribed on a monument to the defenders of Stalingrad.

- 1) the central or main part of something where there is most activity;
- 2) to be surrounded by something, especially hills or countryside;
- 3) to crush (opposition, etc) by overpowering force;
- 4) causing a lot of destruction, or a sudden, violent change;
- 5) to give up the control of or responsibility for something, often because you have been forced to;
- 6) courage and determination despite difficulty;
- 7) very loyal to someone or something;
- 8) a fight, especially during a war;
- 9) to stop fighting and admit defeat;
- 10) to write words in a book or carve (= cut) them on an object.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Did in the summer of 1942, German forces close in on the Soviet city of Stalingrad, an industrial hub nestled along the banks of the Volga or the Neva River?
2. How did the Nazis hope to steamroll their way through the city?
3. Did Joseph Stalin institute any brutal policies?
4. What intention did the Soviet soldiers announce?
5. What was the famous “no land beyond the Volga” battle cry later inscribed on?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Roman Barritus



Credit: Independent Picture Service/UIG via Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The ancient Roman legions usually marched in silence to maintain order in their ranks, but once they encountered the enemy, their lines would erupt with intimidating war cries that some described as resembling the sound of a stampeding elephant. The late-Roman army was particularly fond of the “Barritus,” a guttural cry that had been borrowed from Germanic warriors, many of whom had joined their ranks. The ancient chronicler Tacitus described the Barritus as a “harsh, intermittent roar” that built in volume, and noted that the troops would “hold their shield in front of their mouths, so that the sound is amplified into a deeper crescendo by the reverberation.” The result was a low, ominous murmur that slowly gathered into a terrifying bellow.

1) a word which not only signified the battle-cry of the ancient Germans, but all battle-cries were formerly so called;

2) a walk, especially by a group of soldiers all walking with the same movement and speed;

3) a line of people, especially soldiers;

4) making you feel frightened or nervous;

5) moving quickly in the same direction, often because they are frightened;

6) a very large grey mammal that has a trunk (= long nose) with which it can pick things up;

7) (of speech sounds) produced at the back of the throat and therefore deep;

8) a loud, deep sound;

9) in the past, a large, flat object made of metal or leather that soldiers held in front of their bodies to protect themselves;

10) a loud deep sound, as of pain or anger.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did the ancient Roman legions usually march?
2. What happened once they encountered the enemy?
3. What was the late-Roman army particularly fond of?
4. How did the ancient chronicler Tacitus describe the Barritus?
5. What was the result of a deeper crescendo?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. “Deus Hoc Vult”



The fall of Jerusalem.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1095, Pope Urban II launched the [Crusades](#) after he gave a speech urging European Christians to undertake a spiritual quest to seize the Holy Lands from Muslim control. Upon hearing his address, many in the crowd are said to have hollered “Deus hoc vult!” (“God wills it!”) to show their support. The Pope answered by saying, “Let this then be your war cry in combat, because this word is given to you by God. When an armed attack is made upon the enemy, let this one cry be raised by all the soldiers of God: It is the will of God! It is the will of God!” Shouts of “Deus hoc vult!” went on to echo over dozens of battlefields during the First Crusade, which culminated in a blood-soaked siege at Jerusalem. The pontiff-sanctioned slogan would remain the Christian warriors’ rallying cry until the late-13th century, when the last of the Crusades finally came to an end.

- 1) (the title of) the leader of the Roman Catholic Church;
- 2) to strongly advise or try to persuade someone to do a particular thing;
- 3) relating to deep feelings and beliefs, especially religious beliefs;
- 4) a long search for something that is difficult to find, or an attempt to achieve something difficult;
- 5) to shout loudly;

- 6) the mental power used to control and direct your thoughts and actions, or a determination to do something, despite any difficulties or opposition;
- 7) to express or think what someone else has said or thought;
- 8) to have as a result or be the final result of a process;
- 9) covered or saturated with blood;
- 10) a short phrase that is easy to remember and is used to advertise something or to express the beliefs of a political party or other group.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did Pope Urban II launch the Crusades?
2. What are many in the crowd said to have hollered upon hearing his address?
3. What did the Pope answer?
4. What did the First Crusade culminate in?
5. How long would the pontiff-sanctioned slogan remain the Christian warriors' rallying cry

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. "Tenno Heika Banzai"



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

"Banzai" is best known as a Japanese war cry, but it was originally a generic cheer uttered by both soldiers and civilians alike. The word literally means "ten thousand years," and it has long been used in Japan to indicate joy or a wish for long life. Japanese World War II troops typically yelled it in celebration, but they were also known to scream, "Tenno Heika Banzai," roughly translated as "long live the Emperor," while storming into battle. As the war dragged on, this battle cry became most famously associated with so-called "Banzai charges"—last-ditch human wave attacks that saw Japanese troops run

headlong into American lines. Japanese kamikaze pilots were also known to howl “Tenno Heika Banzai!” as they plowed their aircraft into Navy ships.

1) shared by, typical of, or relating to a whole group of similar things, rather than to any particular thing;

2) a loud shout of approval or encouragement;

3) a person who is not a member of the police or the armed forces;

4) great happiness or pleasure;

5) a special social event, such as a party, when you celebrate something;

6) to happen very slowly;

7) with great speed or without thinking;

8) (in World War II) one of a group of Japanese pilots who performed suicidal missions by crashing their aircraft, loaded with explosives, into an enemy target, esp a ship;

9) to make a loud sound, usually to express pain, sadness, or another strong emotion;

10) to collide forcefully with into.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What is the best known Japanese war cry?

2. What do you know about its origin?

3. What does the word “Banzai” literally mean?

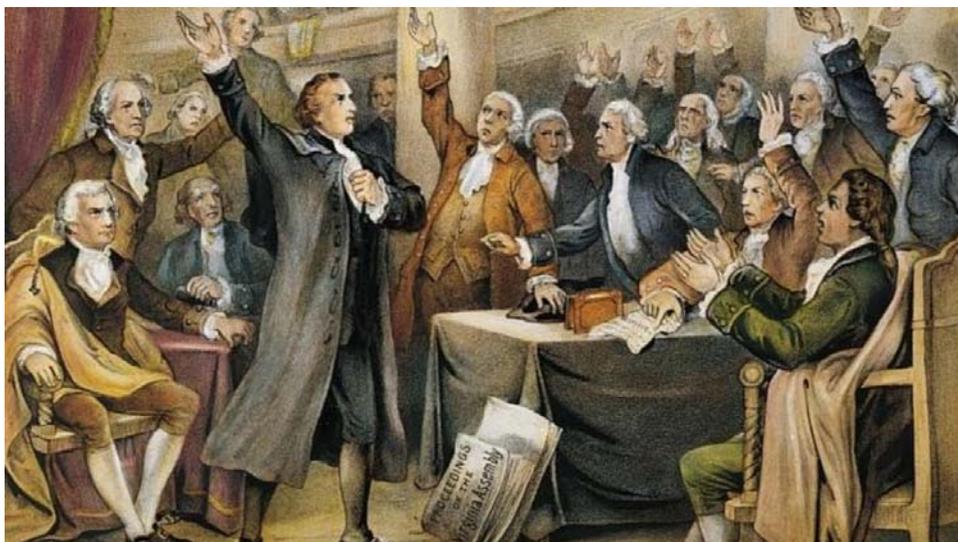
4. Why has it long been used in Japan?

5. What were Japanese World War II troops also known to scream while storming into battle?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. “Liberty or Death”



Patrick Henry delivering his speech.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The American Revolution gave rise to dozens of rallying cries—"No Taxation Without Representation;" "Join or Die;" "Don't Tread on Me"—but few had as significant an impact as "Liberty or Death." The phrase first appeared in a March 1775 address by Patrick Henry, which concluded with the immortal line, "I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!" Henry's speech convinced the Second Virginia Convention to raise militias, and his words immediately became a battle cry among colonial minutemen, who considered them a symbol of their determination to shake off the yoke of British rule. Many Virginia militia recruits marched under banners emblazoned with "Liberty or Death," and some even sewed the words onto their shirts. Henry's call to arms later made a comeback in the 1860s, when several Confederate units placed it on their flags to symbolize the belief that the Civil War was a "second American Revolution."

- 1) important or noticeable;
- 2) a powerful effect that something, especially something new, has on a situation or person;
- 3) very special and famous and therefore likely to be remembered for a long time;
- 4) the freedom and the right to do whatever you want without asking permission or being afraid of authority;
- 5) to persuade someone or make someone certain;
- 6) members of the American militia during the Revolutionary War who were ready to fight at short notice;
- 7) the ability to continue trying to do something, although it is very difficult;
- 8) a situation or an experience that limits someone's freedom;
- 9) a wide piece of cloth with a message on it, often stretched between two poles;
- 10) printed, drawn, or decorated in a very noticeable way.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How many rallying cries did the American Revolution give rise to?
2. Which one had the most significant impact?
3. When did the phrase "Liberty or Death" first appear?
4. Did Patrick Henry conclude the address with the immortal line "I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!"?
5. Why did several Confederate units place this phrase it on their flags?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

**VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.
Слава Україні – Героям Слава!**

<https://www.dw.com>



На параді до Дня Незалежності 24 серпня українські військові уперше вітатимуться словами «Слава Україні – Героям Слава!». Починаючи з 24 серпня це гасло замінить радянські «Здрастуйте, товариші» та «Бажаємо здоров'я» і стане офіційним у Збройних Силах України.

Українські історики зазначають, що вітання «Слава Україні» з різними варіантами відповідей відноситься ще до доби Української революції 1917-21 років: ним послуговувалися «чорні запорожці» та «холодноярівці». У Медведівці на Черкащині навіть встановлено пам'ятний знак на честь першого застосування цього гасла ще у 1919 році.

Найчастіше вказують на книгу Юрія Горліс-Горського «Холодний Яр», де теж згадується таке вітання. Хоча не всі дослідники вважають це джерело надійним, адже книга вийшла у 1934 році і є романом, а не науковою працею.

Однак достеменно відомо, що вітання закріпилося у 1930-х. «ОУН з 1934 року використовувала вітання «Слава Україні!» - «Вождеві слава!», - розповів історик Олександр Зайцев з Українського католицького університету у Львові. «Є свідчення, що під час судового процесу Степана Бандери в 1936 році його прибічники супроводжували вигуки «Слава Україні!» викиданням руки, як у фашистському салюті. Можливо, це й дало привід для фашистських аналогій. Після розколу ОУН 1940 року бандерівці замінили це вітання на «Слава Україні!» - «Героям слава!», а мельниківці деякий час зберігали відповідь «Вождеві слава!». Саме в бандерівській формі вітання набуло популярності.

Тоді ж воно вкоренилося й у масовій свідомості, культурі та фольклорі: серед іншого на агітаційному плакаті Ніла Хасевича, а також у повстанській пісні «Ой у лісі, на полянці».

По війні гасло продовжило життя на еміграції. У Радянській Україні його забороняли та приписували «українським буржуазним націоналістам», яким радянська пропаганда у кіно, пресі, сатиричних журналах десятиліттями створювала винятково негативний образ. Та уже після проголошення незалежності нове політичне життя гасло отримало

завдяки поверненню в Україну провідної діячки ОУН(б) Слави Стецько. Заснований пані Славою, як називали її соратники за життя, Конгрес українських націоналістів (КУН) взяв це вітання за офіційне. З плином років гасло «Слава Україні!» вийшло за межі націоналістичного середовища і органічно затвердилося у суспільно-політичному лексиконі незалежної України, а після Євромайдану та війни на Донбасі набуло особливого поширення і значення: його чути на передовій на Донбасі, на концертах та мітингах, а дружній «привіт» від хорватського футболіста Домагоя Віди лише додав гаслу популярності серед футбольних фанатів і не тільки.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1 Mexican General Santa Anna besieged Colonel William B. Travis and some 200 Texas independence fighters at a former Franciscan mission known as the Alamo.

- a) On February 23, 1636,
- b) On February 23, 1736,
- c) On February 23, 1836,
- d) On February 23, 1936,

2. General Sam Houston and others used the rallying cry to whet their troops' appetite for vengeance, and in April 1836, the Texans routed a superior Mexican army and captured Santa Anna at the Battle of San Jacinto.

- a) "Remember the Alvarado"
- b) "Remember the Alamo"
- c) "Remember the Bryson"
- d) "Remember the Garland"

3. Later recordings of elderly Southern veterans seem to indicate that "The Rebel Yell" was a shrill yelp that resembled , though it may have varied from unit to unit.

- a) the call of a wolf
- b) the call of a lion
- c) the call of a hyena
- d) the call of a coyote

4. The banshee scream was the Confederacy's calling card for most of the war, but its sound has long been

- a) the subject of debate
- b) the subject of unity
- c) the subject of respect

d) the subject of worship

5. When they marched toward their enemies in their organized phalanx formations, Ancient Greek troops typically belted out battle hymns, or “paeans,” designed to invoke and help calm their nerves.

a) the god Apollo

b) the god Artemis

c) the god Demeter

d) the god Dionysus

6. The ancient writer Pindar even addressed them in a 5th century B.C. poem. “Hear me, Alala,” he wrote, “ , prelude of the spears, you to whom men fall as offerings for their homeland in death’s holy sacrifice.”

a) daughter of Apollo

b) daughter of Artemis

c) daughter of Demeter

d) daughter of Ares

7. In the summer of 1942, German forces closed in on the Soviet city of Stalingrad, an industrial hub nestled along the banks of

a) the Neva River

b) the Volga River

c) the Kama River

d) the Don River

8. The famous battle cry was later inscribed on a monument to the defenders of Stalingrad.

a) “no land beyond the Neva”

b) “no land beyond the Don”

c) “no land beyond the Volga”

d) “no land beyond the Kama”

9. The ancient Roman legions usually marched in silence to maintain order in their ranks, but once they encountered the enemy, their lines would erupt with intimidating war cries that some described as resembling the sound of a

..... .

a) stampeding elephant

b) stampeding camel

c) stampeding rhino

d) stampeding bison

10. The late-Roman army was particularly fond of thea guttural cry that had been borrowed from Germanic warriors, many of whom had joined their ranks.

a) “Marritus,”

b) “Darritus,”

c) “Barritus,”

d) “Warritus,”

11 launched the Crusades after he gave a speech urging European Christians to undertake a spiritual quest to seize the Holy Lands from Muslim control.

- a) In 1095, Pope Urban II
- b) In 1195, Pope Urban III
- c) In 1295, Pope Urban IV
- d) In 1395, Pope Urban V

12. Upon hearing his address, many in the crowd are said to have hollered "Deus hoc vult!" to show their support.

- a) ("God with us! ")
- b) ("God supports us!")
- c) ("God watches us!")
- d) ("God wills it!")

13. "Banzai" is best known as a , but it was originally a generic cheer uttered by both soldiers and civilians alike.

- a) Indian war cry
- b) Japanese war cry
- c) Australian war cry
- d) Chinese war cry

14. The word "Banzai" literally means and it has long been used in Japan to indicate joy or a wish for long life.

- a) "a hundred years,"
- b) "ten hundred years,"
- c) "a thousand years,"
- d) "ten thousand years,"

15. The phrase "Liberty or" first appeared in a March 1775 address by Patrick Henry, which concluded with the immortal line, "I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me"!

- a) Death death
- b) Freedom freedom
- c) Independence independence
- d) Power power

16. Henry's speech convinced the Second Virginia Convention to raise militias, and his words immediately became a battle cry among colonial minutemen, who considered them a symbol of their determination to shake off the yoke of

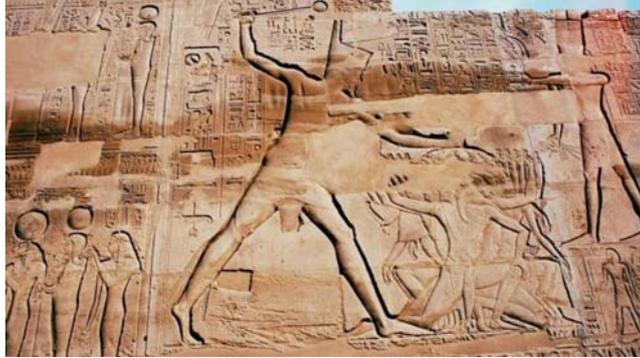
- a) Spanish rule
- b) British rule
- c) French rule
- d) German rule

UNIT V

7 Brutal Sieges

<https://www.history.com/news/7-brutal-sieges>

1. Siege of Megiddo



Egyptian relief in Karnak depicting Thutmose III's victory at Megiddo.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

One of the first recorded military engagements in history, the Battle of Megiddo also resulted in a grueling, months-long siege. The standoff came in the 15th century B.C., when the Egyptian Pharaoh Thutmose III led his forces into modern day Palestine to quell a rebellion by a coalition of Mesopotamian city-states. According to Egyptian military histories, the two armies faced off outside the city of Megiddo in a bloody clash of infantryman and charioteers, with the pharaoh himself supposedly fighting on the front lines. But while the Egyptians routed the coalition forces, they wasted time looting an enemy encampment and allowed the Asiatic army to fall back to the safety of the city's fortifications.

Undeterred, Thutmose set up siege lines and cut off all traffic in and out of the city. The stranglehold lasted for seven brutal months until—reeling from starvation and disease—the town's leaders sent out their young sons and daughters to beg for peace. Having pacified the surrounding region, Thutmose spared Megiddo in exchange for a vow of loyalty from the city's survivors.

1) the surrounding of a place by an armed force in order to defeat those defending it;

2) a situation in which agreement in an argument does not seem possible;

3) to stop something, especially by using force;

4) violent action organized by a group of people who are trying to change the political system in their country;

5) a group formed of different organizations or people who agree to act together, usually temporarily, to achieve something;

6) a group of tents or temporary shelters put in one place;

7) still continuing to do something or enthusiastic about doing it despite a bad situation;

8) a position of complete control that prevents something from developing;

- 9) to be confused or shocked by a situation;
10) a serious promise.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did one of the first recorded military engagements in history, the Battle of Megiddo result in?
2. Why did the Egyptian Pharaoh Thutmose III lead his forces into modern day Palestine in the 15th century B.C.?
3. Where did the two armies face off in a bloody clash of infantryman and charioteers, with the pharaoh himself supposedly fighting on the front lines?
4. Did Thutmose set up siege lines and cut off all traffic in and out of the city?
5. Who spared Megiddo in exchange for a vow of loyalty from the city's survivors?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Siege of Vicksburg



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Along with the Battle of Gettysburg, the Siege of Vicksburg stands as one of the major turning points in the Civil War. The deadlock began in May 1863, when Union General Ulysses S. Grant trapped Confederate forces under John C. Pemberton within the town of Vicksburg, Mississippi. After probing the Confederate lines in a pair of unsuccessful assaults, Grant reluctantly ordered his men to dig trenches and lay siege to the city.

Desperate to avoid the carnage, many of the city's civilians were forced to take refuge in a network of clay caves that became known as the "Prairie Dog Village." In an effort to break the standoff, Grant's forces eventually dug a tunnel and detonated mines under the city's fortifications. While the outnumbered Southerners managed to hold their lines and seal the breach, their victory proved short-lived. Without reinforcements and with only meager supplies, Pemberton finally capitulated on July 4. With the fall of Vicksburg, Union forces

took full control of the Mississippi River, effectively splitting the Confederacy in half for the rest of the war.

1) a state or situation in which agreement in an argument cannot be reached because neither side will change its demands or accept the demands of the other side;

2) to prevent someone from escaping from somewhere, especially a dangerous place;

3) to try to find weaknesses, for example by attacking the enemies in specific areas using a small number of troops;

4) slowly and unwillingly;

5) the violent killing of large numbers of people, especially in war;

6) to (cause something to) explode;

7) an opening in a wall or fence or in a line of military defense;

8) soldiers sent to join an army to make it stronger;

9) (of amounts or numbers) very small or not enough;

10) to accept military defeat.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What battle does the Siege of Vicksburg stand along with as one of the major turning points in the Civil War?

2. When did Union General Ulysses S. Grant trap Confederate forces under John C. Pemberton within the town of Vicksburg, Mississippi?

3. What did Grant reluctantly order his men to do after probing the Confederate lines in a pair of unsuccessful assaults?

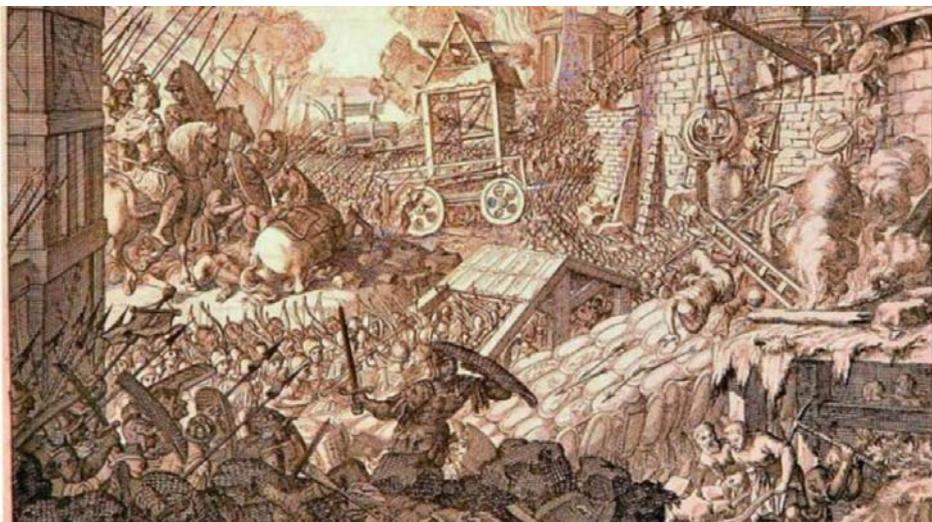
4. Where were many of the city's civilians forced to take refuge in?

5. Did the Union forces take full control of the Mississippi River?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Siege of Tyre



Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 332 B.C., the famed Greek conqueror Alexander the Great set his sights on the ancient city of Tyre, a Mediterranean island located a half-mile off the coast of Lebanon. While Alexander's 35,000-strong army dwarfed the Tyrian military, the city had a strong navy and enough supplies to weather a long standoff. More importantly, the island boasted fortified walls that supposedly stood 150 feet high.

Unable to get close enough to take the city by traditional means, the Greeks chose to lay siege to the island. In one of history's most audacious examples of military engineering, Alexander then ordered his men to use timber and stone to build a causeway connecting the island to the mainland. Once this artificial land bridge had gotten close enough to Tyre, his men were able to set up siege engines and bombard the city walls. After a seven-month standoff, the Greek forces finally breached the fortifications and took the island in a brutal onslaught. Amazingly, Alexander's makeshift causeway later collected sand and silt, permanently changing the island of Tyre into a peninsula.

- 1) someone who has conquered a country or its people;
- 2) to make something seem small by comparison;
- 3) the part of a country's armed forces that is trained to operate at sea;
- 4) to have or own something to be proud of;
- 5) showing great courage or confidence in a way that is impressive or slightly shocking;
- 6) wood used for building or making things;
- 7) a raised road, esp. across water;
- 8) a very powerful attack;
- 9) temporary and of low quality, but used because of a sudden need;
- 10) sand or soil that is carried along by flowing water and then dropped, especially at a bend in a river or at a river's opening.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the famed Greek conqueror Alexander the Great set his sights on the ancient city of Tyre?
2. Where was a Tyre, a Mediterranean island located?
3. Were the city's fortified walls 150 or 250 feet high?
4. What did Alexander order his men to do?
5. How did Alexander's makeshift causeway later change the island of Tyre into a peninsula?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Siege of Candia



17th century map of Candia (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

This two-decade siege began in the 17th century, when a band of the Knights of Malta raided a fleet of Ottoman ships and fled to the Venetian-controlled city of Candia, located on the island of Crete. The Venetians and the Ottomans were already locked in a precarious political situation, and the robbery provided the spark for an all-out war. By 1645, an army of 60,000 Turks had landed on Crete and begun ravaging the countryside. After conquering most of the island, the Ottomans descended on the metropolis of Candia in 1648 and set up an elaborate network of siege lines.

Despite launching repeated assaults and bombardments, the Turks were unable to strike a decisive blow. The citizens of Candia—many of whom spent their whole lives under the blockade—always managed to drive back the Ottoman army and seal the breach before their fortress could be compromised. A French fleet arrived in 1669 to reinforce the city and help lift the siege, but quickly withdrew after its flagship was destroyed in battle. With Candia in ruins and only a few thousand troops left, the defenders finally surrendered shortly thereafter. By the time the blockade finally lifted in September 1669, the city had been under siege for an astonishing 21 years and four months.

- 1) (in the past) a man of high social position trained to fight as a soldier on a horse;
- 2) to make a sudden military attack on a place;
- 3) one which may very easily or quickly become worse;
- 4) the crime of stealing from somewhere or someone;
- 5) a first small event or problem that causes a much worse situation to develop;
- 6) to cause great damage to something;
- 7) to go or come down;
- 8) containing a lot of connected parts or many complicated details;
- 9) to stop fighting and admit defeat;
- 10) the situation in which a country or place is surrounded by soldiers or ships to stop people or goods from going in or out.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did a band of the Knights of Malta raid a fleet of Ottoman ships?
2. What did they do after that?
3. When did an army of 60,000 Turks land on Crete?
4. Despite launching repeated assaults and bombardments, the Turks weren't able to strike a decisive blow, were they?
5. How long had the city been under siege by the time the blockade finally lifted in September 1669?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Siege of Carthage



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

This grisly standoff came as part of the Third Punic War, the last in a series of notoriously violent clashes between the ancient Romans and the Phoenician city of Carthage. In 149 B.C., a Roman army led by Scipio Aemilianus arrived in North Africa intent on destroying Carthage once and for all. Met by 60-foot walls, the Romans cordoned off the city, set up camp and laid siege.

The Carthaginians had prepared for the invasion by turning most of their city into an armory and enlisting slaves and civilians into the military. According to the ancient historian Appian, the women of Carthage even cut off their hair so it could be used as rope for makeshift catapults. Faced with this level of resistance, the Romans were held at bay for three long years. When they finally breached the walls in 146 B.C., Scipio's forces had to fight their way through the city streets for six days and nights before defeating the Carthaginian resistance. By the time the battle had ended, the 700-year old city of Carthage lay in ruins and its remaining 50,000 inhabitants had been sold into slavery.

- 1) a collision or conflict;
- 2) eager and determined to do something;
- 3) to prevent people from entering or leaving a city, usually by forming a line or ring;
- 4) to create or arrange something;
- 5) a place where weapons and other military equipment are stored;
- 6) to join the armed forces;
- 7) a strong, thick cord made of twisted fibers;
- 8) a device that can throw objects at a high speed;
- 9) a part of the coast where the land curves in so that the sea is surrounded by land on three sides;
- 10) to make an opening in a wall or fence, especially in order to attack someone or something behind it.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did a Roman army led by Scipio Aemilianus arrive in North Africa?
2. What was the aim of their arrival?
3. Why did the women of Carthage even cut off their hair?
4. How long did Scipio's forces have to fight their way through the city streets?
5. How many inhabitants remained alive by the time the battle had ended?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Siege of Leningrad



Russian exhibit depicting Siege of Leningrad. (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

World War II's Siege of Leningrad stands as a chilling reminder of the toll a military blockade can take on a civilian population. German forces first reached the city in 1941 as part of Operation Barbarossa, a massive surprise attack on the Soviet Union. Eager to avoid the carnage of urban warfare, the Nazis made no serious attempts to take Leningrad by force. Instead, Adolf Hitler opted for a brutal alternative—laying siege and starving the city into submission.

The 3 million inhabitants of Leningrad had been caught unprepared, and lacked sufficient supplies for a prolonged standoff. In addition to daily bombardments by the Luftwaffe, they were soon forced to contend with extreme hunger, freezing temperatures and disease. People ate everything from wallpaper paste to shoe leather to supplement their meager bread rations, and some even resorted to cannibalism. Despite these horrific circumstances, the citizens of Leningrad managed to endure life under siege for 872 days from September 1941 until January 1944. Even in victory, the siege proved tragic: By the time the city was finally freed by the Red Army, an estimated 1 million Soviets—most of them civilians—had perished.

- 1) making you feel frightened, especially because it is cruel, violent, or dangerous;
- 2) something that makes you notice, remember, or think about something;
- 3) a very bad effect that something has on something or someone over a long period of time;
- 4) when a lot of people are killed and injured, especially in a war;
- 5) the state of being completely controlled by a person or group, and accepting that you have to obey them;
- 6) to have to deal with something difficult or unpleasant;
- 7) animal skin treated in order to preserve it, and used to make shoes, bags, clothes, equipment, etc.;
- 8) to add something to something to make it larger or better;
- 9) the practice of a person who eats human flesh, or the behaviour of an animal that eats others of its own type;
- 10) to die, especially in a terrible or sudden way.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What do you know about World War II's Siege of Leningrad?
2. When did German forces first reach Leningrad?
3. Were the 3 million inhabitants of Leningrad unprepared for such a long siege?
4. What did people eat?
5. Were there any cases of cannibalism?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Great Siege of Gibraltar



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

At the same time that it was embroiled in combat with American colonists during the Revolutionary War, Great Britain was also locked in one of the great sieges in European history. The standoff began in 1779, after Spain and France officially entered the Revolution on the side of the Continentals. Eager to strike a blow against England, the two nations soon joined forces in an attempt to reclaim Gibraltar, a small, rocky outcropping on the Iberian Peninsula that played a key role in British naval operations in the Mediterranean.

In June 1779 a fleet of French and Spanish ships blockaded Gibraltar from the sea, while a large infantry force constructed redoubts and other fortifications on land. The two nations hoped they could force Gibraltar's small garrison of 5,000 troops into a war of attrition, but their siege lines ultimately proved no match for the British Navy, which ran the blockade twice—first in 1780 and then again in 1781. In between these vital resupply operations, the defenders of Gibraltar kept the besiegers at bay with sharpshooters, cannon fire and surprise nighttime attacks. Realizing they could not starve out the garrison, the French and Spanish launched a massive offensive in September 1782, only to be thwarted by the British artillery's use of "red-hot shot"—heated cannonballs that set fire to whole ships and batteries. Defeated, the French and Spanish finally lifted their blockade in February 1783. By that time, the British forces on Gibraltar had been under siege for three years and seven months.

1) to cause someone to become involved in an argument or a difficult situation;

2) a hard hit with the hand or a weapon;

3) to take back something that was yours;

4) a rock or group of rocks above the surface of the ground;

5) a small hidden place, for example where soldiers hide themselves when they are fighting;

6) the process of gradually destroying your enemy or making them weak by attacking them continuously;

7) someone who is very skilful at hitting what they aim at when shooting a gun;

- 8) to prevent someone from doing what they are trying to do;
- 9) a heavy iron ball fired from a cannon;
- 10) several large guns used together.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did Spain and France officially enter the Revolution?
2. Why did the two nations soon join forces?
3. Why was Gibraltar, a small, rocky outcropping on the Iberian Peninsula, so important?
4. When did a fleet of French and Spanish ships blockade Gibraltar from the sea?
5. How did the defenders of Gibraltar manage to keep the besiegers at bay?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

4 облоги давнього Львова



Серед багатьох історичних досягнень Львів може похвалитися ще й тим, що протягом трьох із половиною століть жоден неприятель не міг взяти міста. За цей час Львів пережив більше сотні облог турків, татар, молдаван, козаків і російських військ, коли сили ворогів у десятки, а то й у сотні разів переважали сили захисників, але все ж нападники не змогли здобути твердині королівського міста.

Одна з першій відомих львівських облог сталася 1286 року. Татарський хан Телебуга оточив місто і вислав до Львова на перемовини про здачу міста своїх послів. Як розповідає стара Львівська легенда, перед тим, як показати місто татарським послам, жінки повикочували на вулиці безліч пустих діжок і поперевертали їх догори дном. Потім повимітали з комірок усі залишки зерна, борошна й крупи, які там ще були, і засипали цими рештками вершечки пустих діжок, аби склалося враження, що вони повні. А ще повипускали із хлівів усю пташину і худобу, яка ще залишилася, і та з криком і вереском бігала вулицями.

Однією з найжорстокіших і найконтroversійніших облог Львова була перша облога Богдана Хмельницького 1648 року. Йшла визвольна війна українського народу проти панування Речі Посполитої. Польська шляхта щойно зазнала нищівної поразки під Пилявцями. Ущент розбиті поляки тікали на Захід, а Хмельницький, захопивши в їхньому обозі величезні багатства, вже мріяв про здобуття Кракова і Варшави. 200 тисяч козаків і їхніх союзників кримських татар підходили до Львова.

1675 року, через три роки після невдалої облоги міста військом турецького султана Мехмета Четвертого, вкупі з українськими козаками гетьмана Петра Дорошенка велике татарське військо рушило під Львів. Король Ян Третій Собеський поспішив зі своїм військом до Львова. За свідченням англійського історика Коннора і французького Сальванді, неподалік Знесіння на Лисеницьких полях відбулася така блискавична військова перемога, яка навряд чи була до цього часу відома у світовій історії. Талановитий воєначальник Ян Собеський маючи лиш сім тисяч вояків ущент розбив майже 50 тисяч добре озброєних татар і турків. Рештки татарського війська з ганьбою втекли додому.

У 1704 році, уперше за багато століть, Львів таки був узятий ворогом. Блискучий військовий стратег двадцятитрирічний шведський король Карл Дванадцятий угледів у львівській Босацькій хвiртці так званий мертвий кут, який погано прострiлювався з міських укріплень. Шостого вересня 1704 року серед темної ночі шведи здобули монастир кармелітів босих. Комендант міста Францішек Галецький у цей час солодко спав за декілька десятків метрів від подій у Пороховій вежі. Зачувши галас і постріли, він дав наказ оборонятися, а сам утік на другий кінець міста в Єзуїтський колегіум.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. One of the first recorded military engagements in history, the Battle of Megiddo also resulted in a grueling, months-long siege. The standoff came in the 15th century B.C., when the Egyptian

..... led his forces into modern day Palestine to quell a rebellion by a coalition of Mesopotamian city-states.

- a) Pharaoh Amenhotep III
- b) Pharaoh Tutankhamun
- c) Pharaoh Ramses II
- d) Pharaoh Thutmose III

2. The stranglehold lasted for seven brutal months until—reeling from starvation and disease—the town's leaders sent out to beg for peace.

- a) their wives
- b) their young sons and daughters
- c) their sisters and brothers
- d) their mothers and grandmothers

3. Along with the Battle of Gettysburg, the Siege of Vicksburg stands as one of the major turning points in

- a) the World War I
- b) the World War II
- c) the Civil War
- d) the Cold War

4. Desperate to avoid the carnage, many of the city's civilians were forced to take refuge in a network of clay caves that became known as the

- a) "Prairie Dog Village."
- b) "Prairie Camel Village."
- c) "Desert Dog Village."
- d) "Desert Camel Village."

5. In 332 B.C., the famed Greek conqueror Alexander the Great set his sights on the ancient city of Tyre, a Mediterranean island located a half-mile off

- a) the coast of Syria
- b) the coast of Cyprus
- c) the coast of Israel
- d) the coast of Lebanon

6. After, the Greek forces finally breached the fortifications and took the island in a brutal onslaught

- a) a four-month standoff
- b) a five-month standoff
- c) a seven-month standoff
- d) a six-month standoff

7. By 1645, an army of 60,000 Turks and begun ravaging the countryside. After conquering most of the island, the Ottomans descended on the metropolis of Candia in 1648 and set up an elaborate network of siege lines.

- a) had landed on Crete
- b) had landed on Cyprus
- c) had landed on Sicily
- d) had landed on Corsica

8. With Candia in ruins and only a few thousand troops left, the defenders finally surrendered shortly thereafter. By the time the blockade finally lifted in September 1669, the city had been under siege for an astonishing

- a) 5 years and four months
- b) 10 years and four months
- c) 20 years and four months
- d) 21 years and four months

9. This grisly standoff came as part of the, the last in a series of notoriously violent clashes between the ancient Romans and the Phoenician city of Carthage.

- a) First Punic War
- b) Second Punic War
- c) Third Punic War
- d) Fourth Punic War

10. In 149 B.C., a Roman army led by Scipio Aemilianus arrived intent on destroying Carthage once and for all.

- a) in North Africa
- b) in South Africa
- c) in East Africa
- d) in West Africa

11. World War II's Siege of stands as a chilling reminder of the toll a military blockade can take on a civilian population

- a) Sevastopol
- b) Leningrad
- c) Novgorod
- d) Vologda

12. The of Leningrad had been caught unprepared, and lacked sufficient supplies for a prolonged standoff.

- a) 1 million inhabitants
- b) 2 million inhabitants
- c) 3 million inhabitants
- d) 4 million inhabitants

13. At the same time that it was embroiled in combat with American colonists during the Revolutionary War,was also locked in one of the great sieges in European history.

- a) Great Britain
- b) Germany
- c) Spain
- d) France

14. In June 1779 a fleet of blockaded Gibraltar from the sea, while a large infantry force constructed redoubts and other fortifications on land.

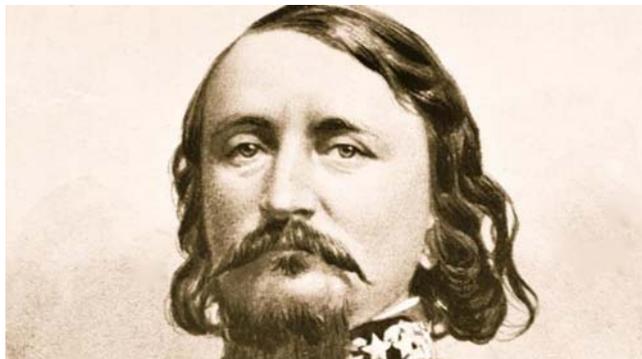
- a) French and Spanish ships
- b) British and Spanish ships
- c) French and German ships
- d) American and Spanish ship

UNIT VI

6 Wars Fought for Ridiculous Reasons

<https://www.history.com/news/6-wars-fought-for-ridiculous-reasons>

1. The Pig War



*George Pickett—leader of American forces during the Pig War.
(Credit: Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The aptly named Pig War nearly saw an argument over a slaughtered swine lead to a full-scale conflict between the United States and Great Britain. The controversy began in 1859 on San Juan Island, a chunk of land located between the mainland United States and Vancouver Island. At the time, the island was home to American settlers and British employees of the Hudson's Bay Company, and both parties had laid claim to its fertile soil. The first and only shots of the Pig War came on June 15, 1859, when an American farmer named Lyman Cutlar gunned down a British-owned black boar after he discovered the animal rooting through his potato patch. The ensuing argument over the dead hog increased tensions between the two groups of settlers, and Cutlar was eventually threatened with arrest.

After the Americans reported the incident to the military, the U.S. Army dispatched Captain George Pickett—later a Confederate general during the Civil War—to San Juan with a small complement of troops. Pickett upped the ante by declaring the whole island U.S. property, and the British responded by sending a fleet of heavily armed naval vessels to the coastline. An absurd standoff ensued, and the situation remained on a knife-edge for several agonizing weeks. The two nations would finally negotiate a deal allowing for joint military occupation of San Juan Island in October 1859, ending the Pig War as a bloodless stalemate—save for one unfortunate hog.

- 1) in a way that is suitable or right for a particular situation;
- 2) to kill an animal for meat;
- 3) a part of something, especially a large part;
- 4) the action of firing a gun or another weapon;
- 5) a male pig kept for breeding on a farm, or a type of wild pig;

- 6) happening after something and because of it;
- 7) to send someone or something to a place for a particular purpose;
- 8) to increase the demands or risks in a situation;
- 9) a situation in which agreement in an argument does not seem possible;
- 10) a situation in which neither group involved in an argument can win or get an advantage and no action can be taken.

II. Make sentences with these words.

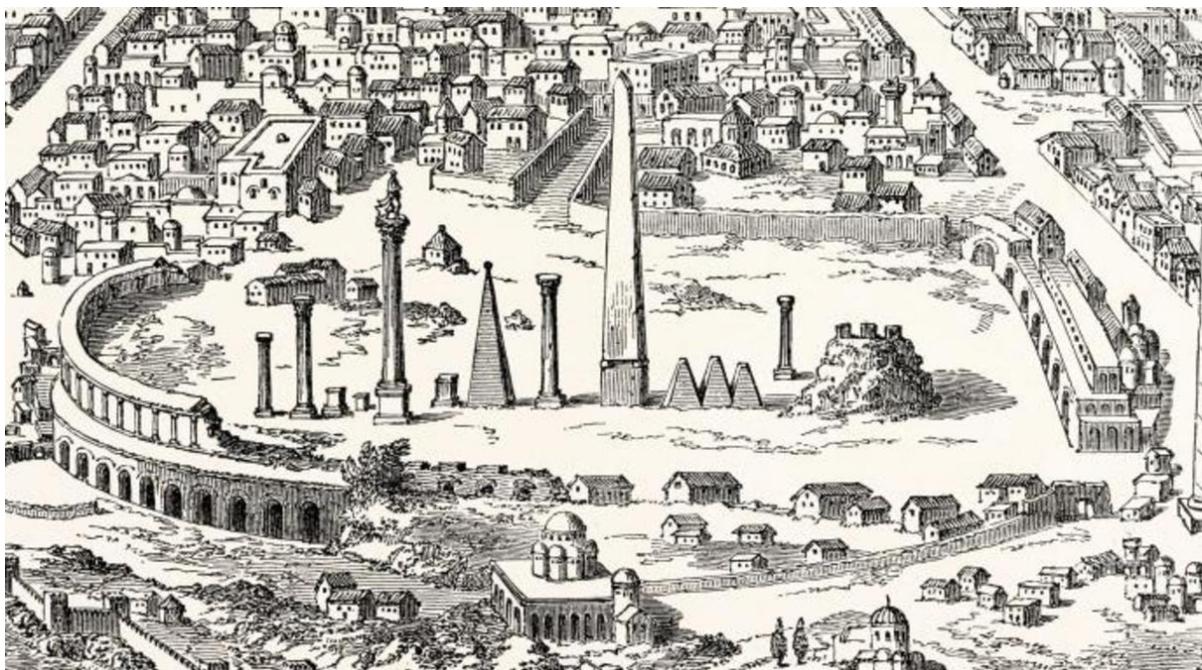
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1. What was the reason of the first and only shots of the Pig War?
- 2. Where is San Juan Island located?
- 3. Who was eventually threatened with arrest as the ensuing argument over the dead hog increased tensions between the two groups of settlers?
- 4. Where did the U.S. Army dispatch Captain George Pickett after the Americans reported the incident to the military?
- 5. How did Pickett up the ante?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Nika Riot



Circus and hippodrome at Constantinople (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 532 AD, massive mobs flooded the streets of Constantinople, burning large parts of the city and nearly toppling the government of the Emperor Justinian—and all of it in the name of chariot racing. The races held at

Constantinople's hippodrome had soared in popularity during the sixth century, and fans had organized themselves into strict factions. These ancient hooligans acted more like street gangs than sports fans, and the most powerful groups—known as the Blues and the Greens—became notorious for their barbarism.

Conflict erupted in January 532, when Emperor Justinian refused to release two members of the Blues and Greens who had been condemned to death. In a rare instance of unity, the two factions banded together and began to riot. In a few short days, they had burned the headquarters of the city prefect, clashed with imperial guards and even attempted to crown a new emperor. Faced with a full-scale revolution, Justinian finally resolved to put down the rebellion by force. After bribing the Blues to gain their support, the emperor launched a devastating assault on the remaining hooligans. By the end of the attack, the riots had been quelled and some 30,000 members of the mob lay dead around the grounds of the hippodrome.

- 1) a large, angry crowd, especially one that could easily become violent;
- 2) to force a leader or government out of power;
- 3) a two-wheeled vehicle that was used in ancient times for racing and fighting and was pulled by a horse or horses;
- 4) a competition in which all the competitors try to be the fastest and to finish first;
- 5) (in ancient Greece or Rome) an open-air course for horse and chariot races;
- 6) a violent person who fights or causes damage in public places;
- 7) famous for something bad;
- 8) extremely cruel and unpleasant behavior;
- 9) (in some countries) a very important official in the government or the police;
- 10) to try to make someone do something for you by giving them money, presents, or something else that they want.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the races held at Constantinople's hippodrome soar in popularity?
2. What were the most powerful groups of the ancient hooligans?
3. What did Justinian finally resolve to do?
4. How did the emperor manage to gain the support of the Blues?
5. How many members of the mob lay dead around the grounds of the hippodrome by the end of the attack?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The War of the Stray Dog



Picture of Petrich incident from French newspaper (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In one of the most bizarre conflicts of the 20th century, a dog inadvertently triggered an international crisis. The incident was the culmination of a long period of hostility between Greece and Bulgaria, which had been at odds since the Second Balkan War in the 1910s. Tensions finally boiled over in October 1925, when a Greek soldier was shot after allegedly crossing the border into Bulgaria while chasing after his runaway dog.

The shooting became a rallying cry for the Greeks, who soon after invaded Bulgaria and occupied several villages. They were even set to commence shelling the city of Petrich when the League of Nations finally intervened and condemned the attack. An international committee later negotiated a ceasefire between the two nations, but not before the misunderstanding had resulted in the deaths of some 50 people.

- 1) a pet that no longer has a home or cannot find its home;
- 2) very strange and unusual;
- 3) inadvertently - in a way that is not intentional;
- 4) trigger - to cause something to start;
- 5) (about a difficult situation or negative emotion) that cannot be controlled any more and people start to argue or fight;
- 6) used when something illegal or wrong is said to have been done, but has not been proved;
- 7) to begin something;
- 8) to become involved in an argument, fight, or other difficult situation in order to change what happens;
- 9) to say very strongly that you do not approve of something or someone, especially because you think it is morally wrong;

10) an agreement to stop fighting for a period of time, especially so that a more permanent agreement can be made.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Why did tensions between Greece and Bulgaria finally boil over in October 1925?

2. What event became a rallying cry for the Greeks?

3. Who soon after invaded Bulgaria and occupied several villages?

4. What city were the Greeks even set to commence shelling?

5. How many people died in this war?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The War of Jenkins' Ear



Painting of the capture of Porto Bello

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1738, a British mariner named Robert Jenkins displayed a severed, decomposing ear before the members of Parliament. As part of a formal testimony, he claimed that a Spanish coastguard officer had sliced off his ear seven years earlier as punishment for smuggling. Spurred on by this stirring testimony, the British had soon declared war on the kingdom of Spain. Thus began the outlandish “War of Jenkins’ Ear.”

In truth, a clash between the British and Spanish had been in the works since the beginning of the 1700s, and Jenkins’ missing ear merely served as a convenient catalyst. The conflict had its roots in territorial disputes over the border between Spanish Florida and British Georgia, as well as the Spanish of boarding and harassing English vessels like the one captained by Jenkins. Fighting began in late 1739, and continued for two years in Florida and Georgia, with

neither side emerging as the clear victor. The conflict later merged with the more expansive War of the Austrian Succession, which would not end until 1748.

- 1) a sailor;
- 2) a formal statement saying that something is true, especially one a witness makes in a court of law;
- 3) something that is done in order to punish someone, or the act of punishing;
- 4) the crime of taking something illegally from one country to another;
- 5) producing strong feelings or excitement in someone;
- 6) strange and unusual;
- 7) a fight or argument between people;
- 8) something or someone that causes an important change or event to happen;
- 9) to combine or join together, or to cause things to do this;
- 10) a number of persons or things coming one after another in time or space; series; sequence.

II. Make sentences with these words.

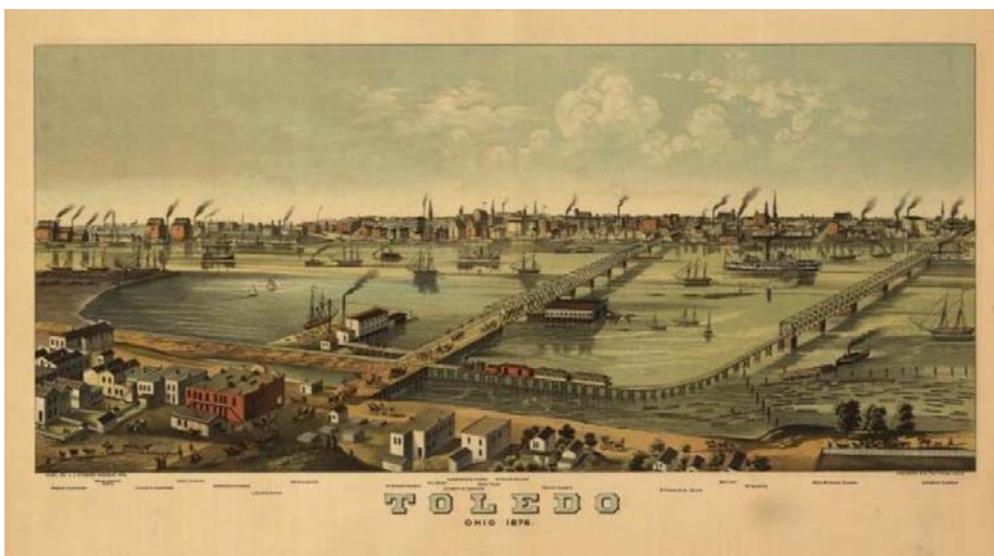
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did Robert Jenkins claim as a part of a formal testimony?
2. How did the outlandish “War of Jenkins’ Ear” begin?
3. Over which territories did the conflict have its roots?
4. How long did the fighting in Florida and Georgia continue ?
5. When did the conflict end?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Toledo War



Toledo, Ohio, in the late 1800s (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Michigan and Ohio might now be known their longstanding football rivalry, but the two states once nearly went to war over a border dispute. The argument began in 1803, when the newly formed state of Ohio took ownership of a sliver of land containing the town of Toledo. Michigan territory later disputed Ohio's claim on this "Toledo strip" in the 1830s, launching a heated debate that teetered on the edge of violence for several weeks.

In what became known as the Toledo War, both sides wrestled for political control of the territory, and both raised militias to defend against a possible invasion by the other. Desperate for Ohio's valuable electoral votes, President Andrew Jackson finally intervened in 1835, and by 1836 a compromise was sealed. The détente saw Michigan territory relinquish its claim on the Toledo strip in exchange for statehood and a portion of the Upper Peninsula. Many viewed the decision as a grave injustice, but some residents of the disputed region were quick to accept their newfound status as Ohioans. When one woman learned of the decision, she is said to have quipped, "Thank the Lord, I never did like that Michigan weather anyway."

- 1) a serious and often continuing competition;
- 2) an argument or disagreement, especially an official one between, for example, workers and employers or two countries with a common border;
- 3) a very small, thin piece of something, usually broken off something larger;
- 4) to appear to be about to fall while moving or standing;
- 5) to try to deal with or solve a difficult problem;
- 6) needing or wanting something very much;
- 7) to intentionally become involved in a difficult situation in order to improve it or prevent it from getting worse;
- 8) to make an agreement more certain or to approve it formally;
- 9) an improvement in the relationship between two countries that in the past were not friendly and did not trust each other;
- 10) to give up something such as a responsibility or claim.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What state took ownership of a sliver of land containing the town of Toledo?
2. What did Michigan territory later dispute?
3. When did President Andrew Jackson finally intervene in the argument?
4. Were all the residents of the disputed region quick to accept their newfound status as Ohioans?
5. What did one woman say when she learned of the decision?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Pastry War



Picture of the taking of citadel San Juan de Ulua. (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1828, angry mobs destroyed large parts of Mexico City during a military coup. One of the victims of the rioting was an expatriate French pastry chef named Remontel, whose small café was ransacked by looters. Mexican officials ignored his complaints, so Remontel petitioned the French government for compensation. His request sat unnoticed until a decade later, when it came to the attention of King Louis-Philippe. The king was already furious that Mexico had failed to repay millions in loans, and now he demanded they pay 600,000 pesos to compensate the pastry chef for his losses. When the Mexicans balked at handing over such an astronomical sum, Louis-Philippe did the unexpected: He started a war.

In October 1838, a French fleet arrived in Mexico and blockaded the city of Veracruz. When the Mexicans still refused to pay up, the ships began shelling the San Juan de Ulua citadel. A few minor battles followed, and by December as many as 250 soldiers had been killed. The famous general Santa Anna even came out of retirement to lead the Mexican army against the French, and he lost a leg after he was wounded by grapeshot. Fighting finally ended in March 1839, when the British government helped broker a peace deal. As part of the treaty, the Mexicans were forced to shell out the 600,000 pesos—no doubt a large sum for a pastry shop at the time.

1) a sudden illegal, often violent, taking of government power, especially by part of an army;

2) someone who does not live in their own country;

3) a food made from a mixture of flour, fat, and water, rolled flat and either wrapped around or put over or under other foods, and then baked;

4) a skilled and trained cook who works in a hotel or restaurant, especially the most important cook;

5) to go through a place, stealing things and causing damage;

6) an amount of money that is borrowed, often from a bank, and has to be paid back, usually together with an extra amount of money that you have to pay as a charge for borrowing;

7) to be unwilling to do something or to allow something to happen;

8) a strong castle in or near a city, where people can shelter from danger, especially during a war;

9) to arrange something such as a deal, agreement, etc. between two or more groups or countries;

10) to spend a lot of money on something, often when you do not really want to.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

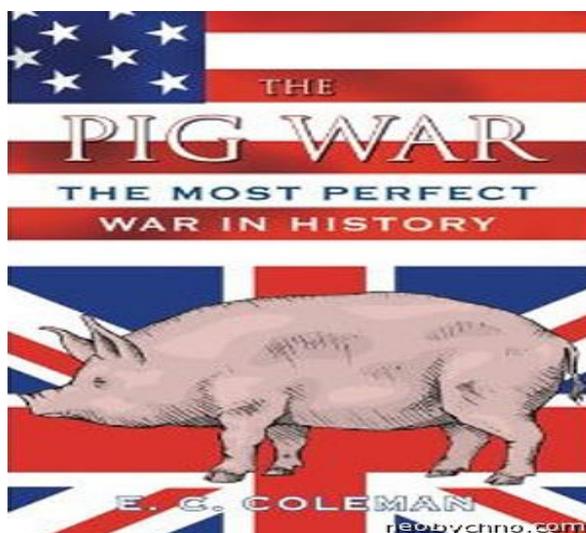
1. What was Remontel?
2. Why did Remontel petition the French government?
3. What did Louis-Philippe do when the Mexicans balked at handing over such an astronomical sum?
4. Why did the ships begin shelling the San Juan de Ulua citadel?
5. How did the British government manage to help?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Війна через свиню та картоплю



Були часи, коли на північноамериканському континенті примудрялися уживатися молоді США, зовсім юна Канада, російські колонії і те, що залишалося від колишньої могутності Сполученого Королівства – так звана Британська Північна Америка (сьогодні вона у складі США і Канади). У 1859 році американці і англійці вирішили посваритися через острови Сан Хуан в районі Ванкувера. Вони вважалися нічийними: непорядок чи правда?

5 червня 1859 житель спірних островів, американський фермер Лайман Катлер застрелив у своєму городі великого чорного кнура, який нахабно жер його картоплю, причому не вперше. Виявилося, що кабан був власністю якогось Гріффіна – ірландця, який отримав землю від англійців. Катлер запропонував Гріффіну 10 баксів компенсації, той у відповідь зажадав сто. Тоді Катлер заявив, що взагалі нічого не буде платити, оскільки свиня вторглася на його землю. До цього інциденту обидві сторони конфлікту жили мирно.

Коли британська влада пригрозила заарештувати Катлера, американські поселенці звернулися до своєї влади по військовий захист. Спочатку американці послали на острів 66 солдатів 9-го піхотного полку під командуванням капітана Джорджа Пікетта з наказом не дати висадитися британцям. У свою чергу британці, подумали, що нахабні американці вирішили захопити весь острів і відправили до острова три військові кораблі під командуванням капітана Джеффри Хорнбі. Почалася ескалація і вже до 10 серпня 1859 року з лютою неприязню один на одного дивилися 461 американський солдатів з 14 гарматами і 2140 британців зі 167 знаряддями. Незалежно один від одного обидві сторони вирішили захищатися у разі нападу, але ні в якому разі не стріляти першими. Протягом декількох днів британські та американські солдати обмінювалися образами і лайкою, намагаючись спровокувати один одного, показували дупи, але дисципліна взяла своє і пострілів так і не пролунало. Коли новини про військовий конфлікт дійшли до Лондона і Вашингтона, політики були приголомшені тим, що діється у них на периферії. Негайно від обох сторін на острів були відправлені офіційні особи для розрядки вибухонебезпечної ситуації.

У результаті переговорів сторони домовилися зберегти спільну окупацію острова Сан-Хуан до остаточного вирішення питання, але при цьому зменшити контингент солдатів до чисельності, що не перевищує 100 чоловік з кожного боку. Свиня була єдиною жертвою конфлікту, який в цілому виявився безкровним.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The aptly named Pig War nearly saw an argument over a slaughtered swine lead to a full-scale conflict between

- a) the United States and Germany
- b) Great Britain and France
- c) Great Britain and Austria
- d) the United States and Great Britain.

2. The two nations would finally negotiate a deal allowing for joint military occupation of San Juan Island in October 1859, ending as a bloodless stalemate—save for one unfortunate hog.

- a) the Wolf War
- b) the Lion War
- c) the Pig War
- d) the Deer War

3. In 532 AD, massive mobs flooded the streets of Constantinople, burning large parts of the city and nearly toppling the government of the Emperor Justinian—and all of it

- a) in the name of the victory of the emperor.
- b) in the name of chariot racing.
- c) in the name of horse racing.
- d) in the name of car racing.

4. Conflict erupted in January 532, when Emperor Justinian refused to release two members of who had been condemned to death.

- a) the Reds and Greens
- b) the Blues and Reds
- c) the Browns and Blacks
- d) the Blues and Greens

5. In one of the most bizarre conflicts of the 20th century, inadvertently triggered an international crisis.

- a) a dog
- b) a cat
- c) a bird
- d) a fox

6. The Greeks were even set to commence shelling the city of Petrich when finally intervened and condemned the attack.

- a) the League of Nations
- b) the NATO
- c) the UNO
- d) the WTO

7. In 1738, a British mariner named Robert Jenkins displayed a severed, decomposing before the members of Parliament.

- a) ear
- b) nose
- c) hand
- d) foot

8. In truth, a clash between the British and Spanish had been in the works since the beginning of the

- a) 1400s.
- b) 1500s.
- c) 1600s.
- d) 1700s.

9. Michigan and Ohio might now be known their longstanding football rivalry, but the two states once nearly went to war

- a) over a trade agreement
- b) over a border dispute
- c) over a police dispute
- d) over a religious dispute

10. In what became known as the Toledo War, both sides wrestled of the territory.

- a) for economic control
- b) for economic domination
- c) for political control
- d) for political domination

11. In 1828, angry mobs destroyed large parts of Mexico City

- a) during a military coup.
- b) during a riot.
- c) during a demonstration.
- d) during a strike.

12. In October 1838, a French fleet arrived in Mexico and blockaded the city of

- a) Guadalajara
- b) San Luis Potosí
- c) Guadalupe
- d) Veracruz

UNIT VII

6 Unusual Riots

<https://www.history.com/news/6-unusual-riots>

1. The West Point Egnog Riot



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The “Egnog Riot” of 1826 might be history’s most extreme example of a holiday party gone wrong. The hubbub began on Christmas Eve, when cadets at the United States Military Academy at West Point gathered for their traditional end of the year soiree. West Point had instituted a ban on alcohol earlier that year, but a few cadets—including future president of the Confederacy Jefferson Davis—smuggled in several gallons of spirits and mixed up a batch of potent eggnog. By 4 a.m., their carousing had grown loud enough to draw attention. When faculty members tried to snuff out the party, the school’s North Barracks erupted into chaos. Around 90 inebriated cadets ignored orders and began breaking windows, smashing furniture and even threatening their superiors with swords. One reveler beat a barracks monitor with a log, and another shot at a faculty member with a pistol as the man tried to break open a barricaded door. It took until dawn before the drunken cadets finally came to their senses. By then, many had more than a hangover to worry about. Nineteen rioters were charged for their role in the disturbance, and 12 were expelled. Jefferson Davis managed to dodge a court martial, but only because he’d been ordered to his room and passed out before things got out of hand.

1) a drink made from milk, sugar, and eggs, often mixed with alcohol such as brandy or rum;

2) a mixture of continuing noises producing a feeling of busy activity or confused excitement;

- 3) a formal or fashionable evening party;
- 4) an official order that prevents someone doing something, or something from happening;
- 5) to cause something to end suddenly;
- 6) having drunk too much alcohol;
- 7) someone who dances, drinks, sings, etc. at a party or in public, especially in a noisy way;
- 8) a small gun that is held in and fired from one hand;
- 9) to force someone to leave a school, organization, or country;
- 10) to avoid something unpleasant.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1. When did the the “Eggnog Riot” begin?
- 2. What ban did West Point institute earlier that year?
- 3. What did a few cadets—including future president of the Confederacy Jefferson Davis—smuggle and bring to West Point?
- 4. What did around 90 inebriated cadets do?
- 5. How were the rioters punished?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Rite of Spring Riot



Igor Stravinsky

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

It’s hard to imagine classical music leading to violence, but that’s precisely what happened on May 29, 1913, when composer Igor Stravinsky’s avant-garde ballet “The Rite of Spring” debuted at the

Théâtre des Champs-Élysées in Paris. Eyewitness accounts differ, but most suggest the uproar began shortly after the curtain rose and the piece's first notes rang out. Audience members hissed and jeered at the performers, and some hurled objects at the stage. As the orchestra struggled to continue playing over the din, fights broke out between rival factions of spectators. One of the musicians would later write, "Many a gentleman's shiny top hat or soft fedora was pulled down by an opponent over his eyes and ears, and canes were brandished like menacing implements of combat." According to some accounts, the scuffles eventually poured out onto the streets, and one man challenged another to a duel before the police arrived and made arrests. It's still not entirely clear what triggered the melee. Some argue the crowd was simply jarred by the dissonant sounds and unusual dance choreography, but others suggest the disturbance was pre-planned by enemies of Stravinsky and ballet choreographer Vaslav Nijinsky.

- 1) to perform or appear in public, or to be shown or introduced to the public, for the first time;
- 2) a person who was present at an event and can therefore describe it;
- 3) a lot of shouting and noise because people are very angry or upset about something;
- 4) to express disapproval or dislike of something or somebody by making long loud 's' sounds;
- 5) throw something violently and with a lot of force;
- 6) a loud, unpleasant confused noise that lasts for a long time;
- 7) a man's hat, like a trilby but with a wider brim;
- 8) a short fight that is not very violent;
- 9) to disagree or seem wrong or unsuitable;
- 10) someone who invents the movements for a ballet or other dance and tells the dancers how to perform them.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What happened when composer Igor Stravinsky's avant-garde ballet "The Rite of Spring" debuted at the Théâtre des Champs-Élysées in Paris?
2. What did audience members do?
3. What happened after the performance?
4. Did the audience enjoy the dissonant sounds and unusual dance choreography?
5. Who was the disturbance pre-planned by?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Jerusalem Mooning Riot



Looting of the Temple in Jerusalem

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In his famous work, “The Jewish War,” the ancient chronicler Josephus recounts a particularly unusual disturbance that occurred between Jews and occupying Roman soldiers in the 1st century A.D. The incident began during Passover, when scores of Jews gathered for a celebration at a temple in Jerusalem. Roman troops stood guard over the ceremonies from atop battlements, and according to Josephus, “One of the soldiers, raising his robe, stooped in an indecent attitude, so as to turn his backside to the Jews, and made a noise in keeping with his posture.” This ancient instance of “mooning” sent the crowd into an outrage, and many began yelling insults and lobbing stones at the Roman soldiers. A terrified Roman commander called in reinforcements to quell the riot, and the troops attacked the Jewish worshippers in force and tried to drive them from the temple. According to Josephus, the ensuing rush to escape the building “was so great, that they trod upon each other, and squeezed one another, till ten thousand of them were killed.”

- 1) upsetting or disorganizing something which was previously in a calm and well-ordered state;
- 2) a Jewish festival that begins in March or April and lasts for seven or eight days;
- 3) a parapet or wall with indentations or embrasures, originally for shooting through;
- 4) to do something wrong or immoral that somebody would not normally do;
- 5) a feeling of anger and shock;
- 6) an offensive remark or action;
- 7) to throw something so that it goes high in the air in a curve;
- 8) to stop something, especially by using force;
- 9) to put your foot on something or to press something down with your foot;
- 10) to force one's way by pushing or pressing.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the incident between Jews and occupying Roman soldiers begin?
2. Where did Roman troops stand guard over the ceremonies?
3. What did one of the soldiers do?
4. Why did a terrified Roman commander call in reinforcements?
5. What happened according to Josephus?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. St. Scholastica Day Riot



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On February 10, 1355—St. Scholastica's Day—two university students in Oxford, England, complained to the barkeep of the Swindlestock Tavern about the low quality of the wine being served. When the tavern owner responded with “stubborn and saucy language,” the students threw their cups at the man's head and beat him senseless. This seemingly minor bar fight sparked three days of bitter rioting between the Oxford townspeople and university scholars. After ringing church bells to help rally their numbers, both sides clashed with fists and weapons and set fire to nearby buildings. The fighting reached a bloody climax on February 12, when a mob of some 2,000 townspeople descended on the university's academic halls and beat, stabbed and even scalped several scholars before putting the rest to a rout. When the dust finally cleared, 63 students and 30 townspeople lay dead. King Edward III later launched an investigation into the incident, and levied harsh fines and penalties against the town of Oxford. For several hundred years, the town's mayor was forced to march to the university church each St. Scholastica Day and hand over 63 pennies—one for each student killed during the rioting.

- 1) a less common word for pub;
- 2) rude and showing no respect, or referring to sex, especially in a humorous way;
- 3) lacking purpose or meaning; unconscious;
- 4) expressing a lot of hate and anger;
- 5) to injure someone with a sharp pointed object such as a knife;
- 6) to cut the hair and skin off someone's head;
- 7) to officially say that people must pay a tax or charge;
- 8) an amount of money that has to be paid as a punishment for not obeying a rule or law;
- 9) a punishment, or the usual punishment, for doing something that is against a law;
- 10) the elected leader of a city or town.

II. Make sentences with these words.

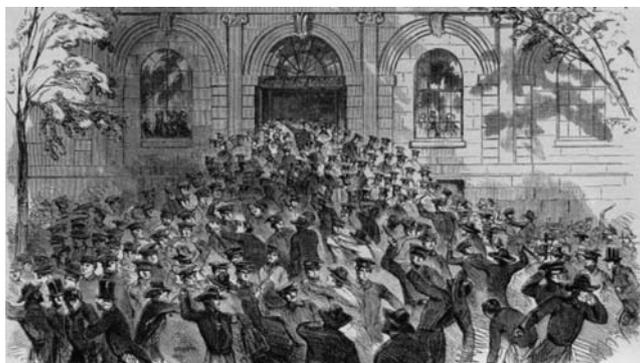
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did two university students in Oxford, England, complained to the barkeep of the Swindlestock Tavern on February 10, 1355—St. Scholastica's Day about?
2. What did the students do when the tavern owner responded with "stubborn and saucy language" ?
3. What was the result of his seemingly minor bar fight?
4. What happened on February 12?
5. Who launched an investigation into the incident, and levied harsh fines and penalties against the town of Oxford?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The New York Doctors' Riot



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Accounts differ as to how the "Doctors' Riot" of 1788 first began, but one of the most common stories describes a young boy or some other passersby

spotting the severed arm of a corpse dangling from the window of the New York Hospital. At the time, the city was awash with rumors—no doubt partially true—of doctors and medical students robbing graves to procure fresh cadavers for dissection, and the misplaced limb was enough to whip people into a frenzy. A mob quickly gathered and stormed the hospital laboratory, where they found three mangled bodies in the process of being dissected. Enraged at what they believed were stolen corpses, the rioters ransacked the lab and burned much of its equipment. New York police locked the hospital’s doctors and medical students in jail for their own protection, but the mob returned the following day and continued to scour medical dormitories and physicians’ homes in search of more bodies. A 5,000-strong crowd later besieged the jail where the doctors were being held and tried to break in with bricks and pieces of wood, only to be pushed back and fired upon by militiamen and jailers. Several people were killed before the mob finally dispersed. Amazingly, the New York Doctors’ Riots weren’t the only public disturbance caused by allegations of grave robbing for medical purposes. Between the 1760s and the 1850s, there were as many as 13 other “anatomy riots” from Maryland to Vermont.

- 1) to see or notice someone or something, usually because you are looking hard;
- 2) to break or separate, especially by cutting;
- 3) a dead body, usually of a person;
- 4) to hang or swing loosely;
- 5) to obtain something, especially something that is difficult to get;
- 6) a dead human body, especially one used for study;
- 7) a state of great anxiety or excitement, in which you cannot control your behavior;
- 8) a large building at a college or university where students live;
- 9) someone who is in charge of guarding a prison or prisoners;
- 10) a statement that someone has done something wrong or illegal, but that has not been proved.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did the “Doctors’ Riot” of 1788 first begin?
2. What did people find in the hospital laboratory?
3. Why did New York police lock the hospital’s doctors and medical students in jail?
4. What did the mob that returned the following day continue to do?
5. Were the New York Doctors’ Riots the only public disturbance caused by allegations of grave robbing for medical purposes?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Leicester Balloon Riot of 1864



Henry Coxwell (right) in a hot air balloon basket, 1862

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On July 11, 1864, British ballooning pioneer Henry Coxwell appeared in the town of Leicester to put on an aerial display of his new balloon, the “Britannia.” Around 50,000 people came to watch the exhibition, but some excited onlookers pushed too close to Coxwell and prevented him from making his ascent. As the aeronaut pleaded with them to back away, a rumor spread through the crowd that the hot air balloon on display was small compared to Coxwell’s other vehicles—a “cruel libel,” he later wrote—which only further incensed the spectators. When the impatient mob began to damage the basket by hanging on it, Coxwell carried through on a threat to let all the gas out of the balloon, “so as not to endanger the lives of my passengers, among whom were two ladies.” As the “Britannia” deflated, the situation devolved into an all-out riot. Coxwell had his clothes ripped by angry members of the mob, and only escaped injury after police helped lead him to safety in a nearby house. While he made his getaway, he was forced to watch as spectators grabbed his prized balloon and tore it to shreds before setting the basket ablaze. A few members of the crowd gathered bits of the wreckage to sell as souvenirs, and others triumphantly paraded the remains through the streets. Leicester later blamed the incident on out-of-town visitors, but a group of locals chipped in to compensate Coxwell for his wrecked balloon.

1) (also hot-air balloon) a large bag of strong light cloth filled with gas or heated air so that it can float in the air. It has a basket hanging below it for people to stand in;

2) a public performance of something that is intended to entertain people;

3) someone who watches something happening without being involved in it;

4) an upward journey;

- 5) to make someone very angry;
- 6) to put someone or something in danger of being hurt, damaged, or destroyed;
- 7) to collapse by letting out air or gas;
- 8) a small thin piece that is torn or cut roughly from something;
- 9) the parts of something such as a plane, ship, or building that are left after it has been destroyed in an accident;
- 10) each person gives some money so that they can pay for something together.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

Answer the questions:

1. Why did British ballooning pioneer Henry Coxwell appear in the town of Leicester on July 11, 1864?
2. How many people came to watch the exhibition?
3. What did Coxwell do when the impatient mob began to damage the basket by hanging on it?
4. How did Coxwell escape injury?
5. What did the spectators do with his prized balloon?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Капітолійські заворушення: взяття будівлі Конгресу США

<https://www.bbc.com > press>



New York Times пише, що президентство Дональда Трампа, яке від самого початку загрузло у злості, чварах і теоріях змов, закінчилося тим, що розлючений натовп, підбурюваний переможеним політиком, штурмував Капітолій. Це так, ніби Америка стала типовою авторитарною державою.

6 січня 2021 року запам'ятають як один з найтемніших днів в історії Сполучених Штатів. Замість дня, покликаного символізувати мирну передачу влади, середа запам'ятається як день, коли натовп, підбурюваний президентом Трампом, увірвався у Капітолій і вибив шибки на дверях до Палати Представників, зчинивши збройне протистояння. Уявити подібне у Вашингтоні – цитаделі американської демократії – було неможливо.

Поліцейські наставляють зброю на протестувальників, щоб не пустити їх у будівлю Капітолію. У ротонді сльозогінний газ. Законодавці ховаються по кабінетах. Радикали стоять на місці віце-президента в Сенаті і сидять за столом спікера Палати Представників.

Не менш тривожними були слова, якими описували події: переворот, повстання, підбурювання. Раптово Сполучені Штати почали порівнювати з умовною «банановою республікою», а столиці інших країн почали тривожитися через внутрішні події у США. Виявилось, що «американська бійня» - це не те, з чим Трамп покінчив (як він обіцяв при вступі на посаду), а те, що через чотири роки сталося через нього у тому самому будинку, де він складав присягу.

Оглядач Дерой Мердок описав події так: «Ці ідіоти тепер надзвичайно ускладнили життя тим із нас, хто захоплюється президентом Трампом за те, що він здобув видатні перемоги у внутрішній і міжнародній політиці».

Тепер на будь-які аргументи про найвищий середній дохід домогосподарств в історії Америки, найнижчий рівень бідності, повну ліквідацію «Ісламської держави» і створення двох вакцин проти COVID-19 за дев'ять місяців буде звучати відповідь: «Ви маєте на увазі того бовдура, люди якого напали на Капітолій?»

Ці неамериканські анархісти зробили ведмежу послугу президенту Трампу, руху «Америка передусім», більше ніж 74 мільйонам виборців, які проголосували за нього в листопаді, і Сполученим Штатам Америки, - зазначає Мердок. Шанси на те, що республіканці побачать Трампа лідером своєї партії після того, як він піде з поста президента, значно зменшилися. У період максимальної політичної напруженості, безвідповідальне ставлення Трампа призвело до нової ганебної кульмінації з украй недемократичними рисами.

Він поставив під сумнів результати виборів без будь-якого раціонального пояснення і завдав, як тепер очевидно, жахливої рани американському суспільству. Треба думати не тільки про радикалів, які штурмували палати Конгресу, а й про мільйони громадян, які втратили віру в демократію через нахабну брехню недостойного президента, - вважає видання.

На країну чекає непросте завдання відновлення, завдані збитки величезні. Демократично мислячим жителям США необхідно проявити єдність, щоб ізолювати «вірус», який шкодить демократії, тобто Дональда Трампа.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The “Eggnog Riot” of 1826 might be history’s of a holiday party gone wrong.

- a) most extreme example
- b) happiest example
- c) saddest example
- d) funniest example

2. The “Eggnog Riot” began , when cadets at the United States Military Academy at West Point gathered for their traditional soiree.

- a) on Easter Eve
- b) on Thanksgiving Day
- c) on Christmas Eve
- d) on Independence Day

3. It’s hard to imagine leading to violence, but that’s precisely what happened on May 29, 1913

- a) folk music
- b) chamber music
- c) pop music
- d) classical music

4. At the performance of Igor Stravinsky’s avant-garde ballet “The Rite of Spring” at the Théâtre des Champs-Élysées in Paris the uproar began and the piece’s first notes rang out.

- a) at the end of the performance
- b) shortly after the curtain rose
- c) when the orchestra start playing the overture
- d) as soon as the conductor appeared

5. In his famous work, “The Jewish War,” the ancient chronicler Josephus recounts a particularly unusual disturbance that occurred between Jews and in the 1st century A.D.

- a) occupying Greek soldiers
- b) occupying Arab soldiers
- c) occupying German soldiers
- d) occupying Roman soldiers

6. According to Josephus, the ensuing rush to escape the building “was so great, that they trod upon each other, and squeezed one another, till of them were killed.”

- a) ten thousand
- b) five thousand
- c) ten hundred
- d) five hundred

7. On February 10, 1355—St. Scholastica’s Day— , England, complained to the barkeep of the Swindlestock Tavern about the low quality of the wine being served.

- a) four university students in Cambridge
- b) two university students in Cambridge
- c) four university students in Oxford
- d) two university students in Oxford

8. For several hundred years, the mayor of Oxford was forced to march to the university church each St. Scholastica Day and hand —one for each student killed during the rioting.

- a) over 63 pounds
- b) over 63 pennies
- c) over 63 cents
- d) over 63 dollars

9. Accounts differ as to how the “Doctors’ Riot” of 1788 first began, but one of the most common stories describes a young boy or some other passersby spottingdangling from the window of the New York Hospital.

- a) the severed arm of a corpse
- b) the severed hand of a corpse
- c) the severed leg of a corpse
- d) the severed foot of a corpse

10. Between the 1760s and the 1850s, there wereother “anatomy riots” from Maryland to Vermont.

- a) as many as 10
- b) as many as 13
- c) as many as 8
- d) as many as 5

11. On July 11, 1864, British ballooning pioneer Henry Coxwell appeared in the town of to put on an aerial display of his new balloon, the “Britannia.”

- a) Maidstone
- b) Newport
- c) Northampton
- d) Leicester

12. Leicester later blamed the incident on , but a group of locals chipped in to compensate Coxwell for his wrecked balloon.

- a) criminals
- b) immigrants
- c) out-of-town visitors
- d) hooligans

UNIT VIII

7 Failed Predictions from History

<https://www.history.com/news/7-failed-predictions-from-history>

1. John Adams' July 2 Independence Day



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Following the Continental Congress's vote to separate from Britain, founding father John Adams wrote to his wife Abigail and predicted, "The Second Day of July 1776, will be the most memorable Epoque, in the History of America...I am apt to believe that it will be celebrated, by succeeding Generations, as the great anniversary Festival." While Adams was certainly correct about Independence Day becoming a major American holiday, he got the date wrong by two days. The Continental Congress first voted aloud to break from the British on July 2, but they didn't finalize and date the Declaration of Independence until [July 4](#). Adams considered the original vote of independence on July 2 to be the more momentous occasion, and he even took part of the day off and went shopping when the Congress met again two days later. "The Colossus of Independence" later grudgingly accepted July 4 as America's accepted birthday, and went on to become inextricably linked to the day after both he and Thomas Jefferson died on it in 1826.

1) the act of showing your choice or opinion in an election or meeting by writing an X on an official piece of paper or putting your hand up;

2) to say that an event or action will happen in the future, especially as a result of knowledge or experience;

3) likely to be remembered or worth remembering;

4) ready; prepared;

5) to make a final and certain decision about a plan, date, etc.;

6) an announcement, often one that is written and official

7) very important because of effects on future events;

8) a person or thing of great size, influence, or ability;

9) unwillingly;

10) in a way that is unable to be separated, released, or escaped from.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did the founding father John Adams write to his wife Abigail and predict following the Continental Congress's vote to separate from Britain?

2. Did he believe that it would be celebrated by succeeding Generations as the great anniversary Festival?

3. Was Adams certainly correct about Independence Day becoming a major American holiday?

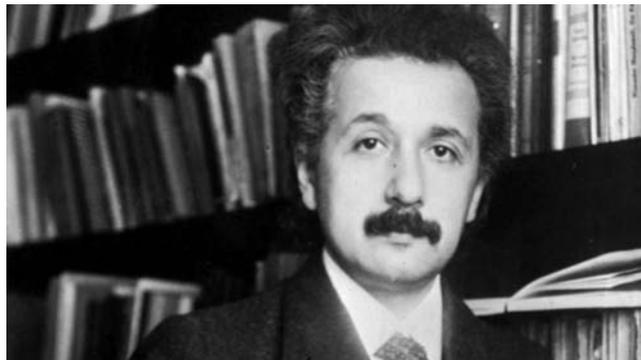
4. Did he get the date wrong by two days?

5. Did "The Colossus of Independence" later grudgingly accept July 4 as America's birthday?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Einstein and Nuclear Power



Albert Einstein in 1905 (Credit: Topical Press Agency/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Albert Einstein's famous equation $E=mc^2$ showed that mass and energy could theoretically be transformed into one another, yet for many years he incorrectly argued that the process could never be controlled. In 1932, the great physicist claimed that "there is not the slightest indication that nuclear energy will ever be obtainable. That would mean that the atom would have to be shattered at will." Einstein believed that it was likely impossible to split the atom without using more energy than would be released, but he later changed his tune after the first experiments with uranium in the late 1930s. His deceptively simple equation has since helped spawn power plants that generate electricity from the energy in fissionable materials, and as much as 12 percent of the world's electricity is now provided by nuclear power.

- 1) a mathematical statement in which you show that two amounts are equal using mathematical symbols;
- 2) the power from something such as electricity or oil that can do work, such as providing light and heat;
- 3) to say that something is true or is a fact, although you cannot prove it and other people might not believe it;
- 4) a sign that something exists, is true, or is likely to happen;
- 5) being or using the power produced when the nucleus of an atom is divided or joined to another nucleus;
- 6) to divide into two or more parts, esp. along a particular line;
- 7) a frame of mind; disposition or mood;
- 8) naturally occurring radioactive metal that is used to produce nuclear energy and weapons;
- 9) to cause to happen or to be created;
- 10) capable of undergoing nuclear fission as a result of any process.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did Albert Einstein's famous equation $E=mc^2$ show?
2. Did he argue that the process could never be controlled?
3. Did Einstein believe that it was likely impossible to split the atom without using more energy than would be released?
4. When did he change his tune?
5. How much of the world's electricity is now provided by nuclear power?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. John Maynard Keynes and the 15-hour workweek



Credit: George Skadding/The LIFE Picture Collection/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1930, the famed British economist John Maynard Keynes wrote an essay on the future of labor called "Economic Possibilities for our Grandchildren." In it, he claimed that increased levels of wealth and prosperity ensured that people in industrialized countries would only need to pop into the office for brief "three hour shifts or a fifteen-hour work week" by the year 2030. and trends in some countries indicate that people are likely to spend even more time on the job in the coming years.

Appealing as it might sound, economic trends indicate that Keynes' utopian "leisure society" won't be arriving any time soon. While total wealth has indeed increased since 1930, so too have personal spending and income inequality. Work hours, meanwhile, have remained largely static for the last half-century, and trends in some countries indicate that people are likely to spend even more time on the job in the coming years.

- 1) renowned, celebrated, recognized, well-known;
- 2) a short piece of writing on a particular subject, often expressing personal views;
- 3) a large amount of money or valuable possessions that someone has;
- 4) the state of being successful and having a lot of money;
- 5) to make something certain to happen;
- 6) to go to a particular place;
- 7) the period that a person is scheduled to work, or a group of workers who work during the same period of time;
- 8) all people in the world as a whole, or the qualities characteristic of people;
- 9) a usual set of activities or way of doing things;
- 10) relating to or aiming for a perfect society in which everyone works well with each other and is happy.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was the title of an essay on the future of labor written by the famed British economist John Maynard Keynes?
2. What did the author claim in his work?
3. Has total wealth indeed increased since 1920 or 1930?
4. Have the work hours considerably changed during the last half-century?
5. What do the trends in some countries indicate?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Joseph C. Ives and the Grand Canyon



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

These days, Grand Canyon National Park in Arizona receives somewhere in the neighborhood of 5 million visitors each year. Those numbers would no doubt have come as a major surprise to Lieutenant Joseph C. Ives, a U.S. topographical engineer who was one of the first non-Indians to explore the canyon. Ives and his men first entered the canyon in March 1858 after being led to it by Mojave and Hualapai Indians, and they spent several days braving snows and treacherous climbs while trying to survey its rivers. A few years later, Ives wrote an extensive report on his mission in which he pronounced the Canyon a beautiful but essentially useless wasteland. "After entering it there is nothing to do but leave," he wrote. "Ours has been the first, and will doubtless be the last, party of whites to visit this profitless locality. It seems intended by nature that the Colorado River...shall be forever unvisited and undisturbed."

- 1) a large valley with very steep sides and usually a river flowing along the bottom;
- 2) (the title of) an officer of middle rank in the armed forces;
- 3) that shows the physical features of an area of land, for example its hills, valleys, and rivers;
- 4) to travel to a new place to learn about it or become familiar with it;
- 5) to deal with an unpleasant or difficult situation;
- 6) extremely dangerous, especially because of bad weather conditions;
- 7) a place or thing to be climbed, esp a route in mountaineering;
- 8) an area of land on which not much can grow or which has been spoiled in some way;
- 9) not making a profit, or not useful to do;
- 10) not touched, moved, or used by anyone.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How many visitors does Grand Canyon National Park in Arizona receive each year?
2. Who would the numbers of visitors have come as a major surprise to?
3. When did Ives and his men first enter the canyon?
4. How did they spend several days in the canyon?
5. What did Ives write in an extensive report on his mission a few years later?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Irving Fisher and the Stock Market



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Economist and Yale professor Irving Fisher spent the early 20th century as one of the undisputed wizards of Wall Street. Today, however, he is best known for making what is perhaps the most disastrously timed stock market prediction in history. The call came in early October 1929, in the days after stock prices leapt to dizzying new heights. Some claimed the jump was a sign that a massive crash was imminent, but Fisher was famously optimistic. As reported in the New York Times, he told guests at a dinner meeting that stock prices had reached “what looks like a permanently high plateau... I believe the principle of the investment trusts is sound, and the public is justified in participating in them.” Only a few weeks later, the stock market experienced a catastrophic crash. Thousands of investors—including Fisher—lost their fortunes in the ensuing hysteria.

- 1) a man who is supposed to have magic powers; someone who is very good at something;
- 2) in a way that causes or constitutes a disaster;
- 3) stock exchange;
- 4) to increase, improve, or grow very quickly;
- 5) very fast or confusing;
- 6) coming or likely to happen very soon;

- 7) a period during which there are no large changes;
- 8) the act of putting money or effort into something to make a profit or achieve a result;
- 9) a large amount of money, goods, property, etc.;
- 10) extreme fear, excitement, anger, etc. that cannot be controlled.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did economist and Yale professor Irving Fisher spend the early 20th century?
2. What is he best known for today?
3. What happened in early October 1929?
4. What did Professor Irving Fisher tell the guests at a dinner meeting?
5. When did the stock market experience a catastrophic crash?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Dewey Defeats Truman



Credit: W. Eugene Smith/The LIFE Picture Collection/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On Election Day 1948, many prognosticators considered the results of the presidential election a foregone conclusion. Incumbent President Harry Truman was lagging far behind in the polls to the Republican Governor of New York, Thomas Dewey, and most analysts had the challenger winning in a walk. That night, as the votes were still being cast, a printers' strike forced the the Chicago Tribune to call the race ahead of time to ensure their early edition made it to print. Following conventional wisdom, the editors went with Dewey, and the Tribune went to press with "DEWEY DEFEATS TRUMAN" emblazoned across its front page. Unfortunately for the Tribune, Truman went on to complete a major upset, winning the Electoral College 303 to 189. The paper made a desperate attempt to round up copies of their inaccurate early edition,

but it didn't take long before one found its way into the president's hands. Two days after his historic win, an overjoyed Truman posed for a now-famous photo op while holding a copy.

1) a person who foretells (future events) according to present signs or indications; prophesy;

2) a conclusion, opinion, or decision formed in advance of proper consideration of evidence, arguments, etc;

3) Incumbent - someone who holds an official post at a particular time;

4) to move or develop more slowly than others;

5) someone whose job is to think about something carefully in order to understand it, and often to advise other people about it;

6) someone who is employed in the trade of printing;

7) the ability to use your knowledge and experience to make good decisions and judgments;

8) marked or shown in order to be very noticeable;

9) confusion and problems;

10) to find and gather together a group of people, animals, or things.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did many prognosticators think about the results of the presidential election on Election Day 1948?

2. Who had most analysts winning in a walk?

3. What event forced the Chicago Tribune to call the race ahead of time to ensure their early edition made it to print?

4. What was the result of the elections according to the Electoral College?

5. What did the paper try to do?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. General John Sedgwick at Spotsylvania Court House



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Few predictions have been as swiftly or disastrously disproven as the one made by Civil War General John Sedgwick at the Battle of Spotsylvania Court House. On May 9, 1864, Sedgwick was leading the Union 6th Corps near the Confederate left flank when rebel sharpshooters began opening fire on his men from a distance of roughly 1,000 yards. Sedgwick noticed several of his troops taking cover in rifle pits or going to ground, and he began teasing them, saying, "What will you do when they open fire along the whole line? I am ashamed of you. They couldn't hit an elephant at this distance." When one of his soldiers told him that dodging an artillery shell had once saved his life, the general laughed and replied "All right, my man; go to your place." Only moments later, Sedgwick was struck in the head by a sharpshooter's bullet and fell to the ground with blood pouring from underneath his left eye. He died almost instantly, supposedly with a smile still on his face.

- 1) in a way that causes or constitutes a disaster;
- 2) to prove that an idea, statement, etc. is not true;
- 3) the side of an army in a battle, or a sports team when playing;
- 4) someone who is very skilful at hitting what they aim at when shooting a gun;
- 5) a long gun which you hold up to your shoulder to shoot;
- 6) a hole in the ground, especially one made by digging;
- 7) to laugh at someone or say unkind things about them, either because you are joking or because you want to upset that person;
- 8) to avoid being hit by something by moving quickly to one side;
- 9) a container, usually with a pointed end, that is filled with explosives and shot from a large gun;
- 10) a small, metal object that is shot from a gun.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Have many predictions been as swiftly or disastrously disproven as the one made by Civil War General John Sedgwick at the Battle of Spotsylvania Court House?
2. When was Sedgwick leading the Union 6th Corps near the Confederate left flank?
3. What did Sedgwick notice several of his troops doing?
4. What did he begin doing?
5. How was General John Sedgwick killed?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

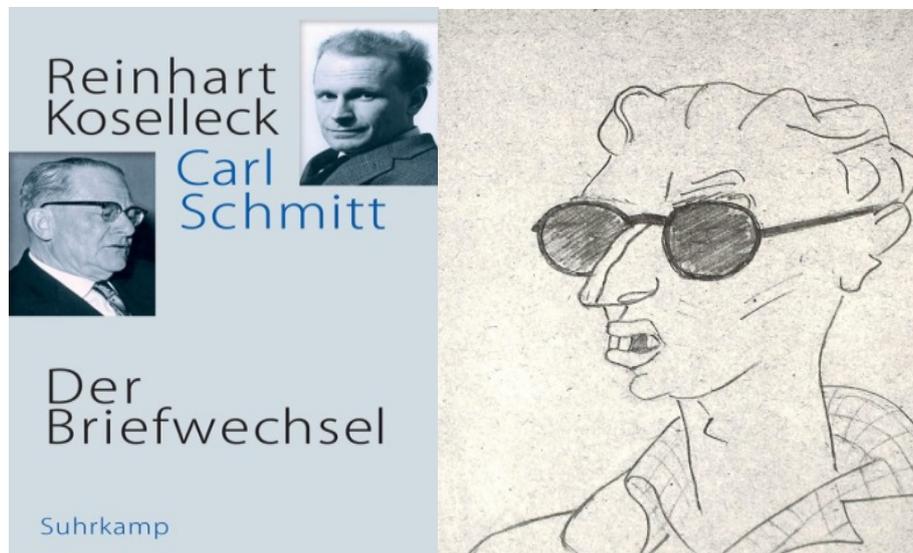
V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Штефан-Людвіг Гофман.

Теорія історії Райнгарта Козеллека для світу в кризі

<http://www.historians.in.ua/index.php/en/istoriya-i-pamyat-vazhki-pitannya/2797-shtefan-lyudvig-gofman-teoriya-istoriji-rajngarta-kozelleka-dlya-svitu-v-krizi>



Райнгарт Козеллек, останній великий теоретик історії, шукав науку про досвід у видимому хаосі подій. Влітку 1947 року, через два роки після закінчення Другої світової війни, британський історик Ерік Гобсбаум поїхав до британської окупаційної зони Німеччини для перевиховання молодих німців. Недавній випускник Королівського коледжу Кембриджського університету, де він також вступив до Комуністичної партії, Гобсбаум працював над дисертацією доктора філософії і щойно забезпечив собі перше призначення викладачем у Біркбек-коледжі в Лондоні. Семінар в імперському мисливському будинку в сільській місцевості Нижньої Саксонії став першою зустріччю Гобсбаума з німцями, які виростили в Третьюму Рейху. Серед учасників був Райнгарт Козеллек, який тоді проходив перший семестр навчання в Гайдельберзькому університеті. Козеллек вступив до Вермахту в лютому 1941 року, за два місяці до того, як йому виповнилося 18 років. Наступного року німецький артилерійський вагон розчавив йому стопу на марші до Сталінграда, що, ймовірно, врятувало йому життя. Козеллека відправили додому до того, як почався моторошний розгром гітлерівської армії. Два його брати загинули у війні: молодший брат – під час бомбардування союзниками, яке зруйнувало сімейний дім, а старший брат, відданий нацист, – в останні тижні війни. Одну з його тіток задушили газом під час нацистської кампанії з евтаназії 1940 року. В останні місяці війни Козеллека знову відправили на східний фронт, який на той час вже дійшов до німецької території. Його підрозділ воював проти Червоної армії в Моравії. 9 травня 1945 року радянські війська захопили його в полон, і він, разом із тисячами

інших німецьких військовополонених, мав протягом двох днів пройти пішим маршем до Аушвіца. Там він брав участь у демонтажі хімічних заводів IG Farben, які залізницею перевезли до Радянського Союзу на повторну збірку – тих самих заводів біля Аушвіца-Біркенау.

До кінця літа німецьких полонених також відправили потягами на схід. Кілька тижнів потому Козеллек прибув до Караганди в Центральній Азії, промислового шахтарського міста, побудованого в казахському степу переважно тими, кого Сталін депортував у 1930-і та 1940-і роки. Серед них було багато поволзьких німців та інших етнічних меншин. Не всі полонені пережили подорож, і більшість спочатку взагалі не були в змозі працювати. Карагандинська область, територія розміром майже з Францію, була похмурим місцем із суворою, холодною зимою та жорстокою літньою спекою, усіяним таборами ГУЛАГу, включно з окремими таборами для німецьких і японських військовополонених. Козеллек пережив табір завдяки іншому ув'язненому, який розпізнав симптоми потенційно смертельної хвороби, та особливій турботі німецького лікаря, також військовополоненого, який до війни працював помічником свого дядька, патолога в Ляйпцизькому університеті. Після 15 місяців перебування в Караганді та чергової операції цей лікар визнав Козеллека непрацездатним, але достатньо здоровим для транспортування додому. Коли він прибув на кордон між Польщею та радянською зоною окупації в Німеччині у вересні 1946 року, Козеллек отримав примірник «Комуністичного маніфесту» (1848) Карла Маркса та Фрідріха Енгельса. Потім у французькій зоні, де тепер мешкала його сім'я, його ненадовго заарештувала поліція, яка прийняла його за бродягу. Американські баптисти замінили його убогий одяг радянського в'язня і дали йому примірник Біблії. Коли Козеллек нарешті прибув додому, його батько чемно попросив гостя представитися – він не впізнав власного сина.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. Following the Continental Congress's vote to separate from Britain, wrote to his wife Abigail and predicted, "The Second Day of July 1776, will be the most memorable Epocha, in the History of America..."

Following the Continental Congress's vote to separate from Britain, founding father John Adams wrote to his wife Abigail and predicted, "The Second Day of July 1776, will be the most memorable Epocha, in the History of America..."

a) founding father Alexander Hamilton

- b) founding father John Adams
- c) founding father Benjamin Franklin
- d) founding father James Madison

2. "The Colossus of Independence" later grudgingly accepted as America's accepted birthday.

- a) July 1
- b) July 2
- c) July 3
- d) July 4

3. Einstein believed that it was likely impossible to split the atom without using more energy than would be released, but he later changed his tune after in the late 1930s.

- a) the first experiments with autunite
- b) the first experiments with uranium
- c) the first experiments with torbernite
- d) the first experiments with carnotite

4. Albert Einstein's deceptively simple equation has since helped spawn power plants that generate electricity from the energy in fissionable materials, and as much as is now provided by nuclear power.

- a) 12 percent of the world's electricity
- b) 22 percent of the world's electricity
- c) 32 percent of the world's electricity
- d) 42 percent of the world's electricity

5. In the essay on the future of labor called "Economic Possibilities for our Grandchildren" the famed British economist John Maynard Keynes claimed that increased levels of wealth and prosperity ensured that people in industrialized countries would only need to pop into the office for brief by the year 2030.

- a) "two hour shifts or a ten-hour work week"
- b) "four hour shifts or a twelve-hour work week"
- c) "three hour shifts or a fifteen-hour work week"
- d) "six hour shifts or a fourteen-hour work week"

6. Appealing as it might sound, economic trends indicate that Keynes' utopian "leisure society"

- a) will arrive soon
- b) will never arrive
- c) won't arrive any time soon
- d) has already arrived

7. These days, Grand Canyon National Park receives somewhere in the neighborhood of 5 million visitors each year.

- a) in Alaska
- b) in California
- c) in Alabama
- d) in Arizona

8. Lieutenant Joseph C. Ives, a U.S. topographical engineer was one of the first to explore the canyon.

- a) non-Indians
- b) Indians
- c) Britains
- d) Spaniards

9. Economist and Yale professor Irving Fisher spent as one of the undisputed wizards of Wall Street.

- a) the early 19th century
- b) the late 19th century
- c) the early 20th century
- d) the late 20th century

10. Today, however, he is best known for making what is perhaps the most disastrously timed in history.

- a) stock market prediction
- b) colonization prediction
- c) globalization prediction
- d) immigration prediction

11. On Election Day 1948, many prognosticators considered the results of the presidential election

- a) an unpredictable conclusion.
- b) a foregone conclusion.
- c) an unfounded conclusion.
- d) an unclear conclusion.

12. Incumbent President Harry Truman was lagging far behind in the polls to the, Thomas Dewey, and most analysts had the challenger winning in a walk.

- a) Democratic Governor of Washington
- b) Democratic Governor of New York
- c) Republican Governor of Washington
- d) Republican Governor of New York

13. Few predictions have been as swiftly or disastrously disproven as the one made by at the Battle of Spotsylvania Court House.

- a) Civil War General John Sedgwick
- b) Civil War General John E. Wool
- c) Civil War General Samuel Cooper
- d) Civil War General Thomas Lawson

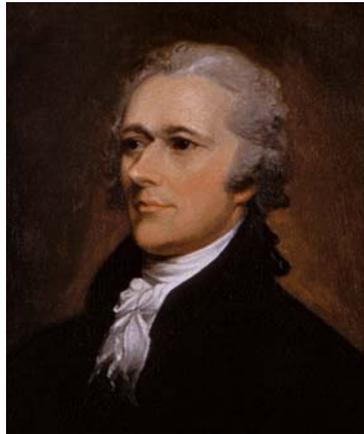
14. On May 9, 1864, the General was leading the Union 6th Corps near the Confederate left flank when rebel sharpshooters began opening fire on his men from a distance

- a) of roughly 10 yards.
- b) of roughly 100 yards.
- c) of roughly 1,000 yards.
- d) of roughly 1,100 yards.

UNIT IX

8 Early American Political Scandals

<https://www.history.com/news/8-early-american-political-scandals>



1. The Hamilton-Reynolds Affair

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The nation's first major sex scandal began in 1791, when Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton started an affair with a married woman named Maria Reynolds. Unbeknownst to Hamilton, Reynolds' husband James had full knowledge of the dalliance, and he eventually contacted the founding father and demanded more than \$1,000 in hush money, which Hamilton paid. The affair continued for several more months, but in late-1792 James Reynolds finally exposed it to government investigators after being implicated in an unrelated financial scandal. He even claimed that Hamilton had been involved in illegal financial speculation.

When confronted by a group of politicians that included James Monroe, Hamilton came clean about the affair and handed over love letters from Maria Reynolds to exonerate himself of any illegal activity. The matter was kept under wraps for several years, but it resurfaced in 1797 after a muckraker journalist named James Callender got ahold of the love letters and published them in a pamphlet. Forced to choose between airing his dirty laundry or letting the charges go unanswered, Hamilton took action and published a pamphlet of his own, which admitted his "amorous connection" with Maria Reynolds while also refuting all accusations of financial impropriety. While Hamilton's candor helped clear him of any corruption claims, reports of his infidelity would stain his reputation for the rest of his career.

1) the government department, in the UK and some other countries, that is responsible for financial matters such as spending and tax;

2) without a particular person knowing;

3) (involvement in) a sexual relationship that is not lasting or serious;

4) money given not to reveal information which could be damaging or embarrassing;

5) someone who carries out investigations, especially as part of their job;

6) to show that someone is involved in a crime or partly responsible for something bad that has happened;

7) to show or state that someone or something is not guilty of something;

8) behavior that is dishonest, socially unacceptable, or unsuitable for a particular situation;

9) (an act of) having sex with someone who is not your husband, wife, or regular sexual partner;

10) to permanently spoil something such as someone's reputation.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the nation's first major sex scandal begin?

2. How much money did Reynolds' husband James demand from Hamilton?

3. When did James Reynolds finally expose the affair to government investigators?

4. Did he claim that Hamilton had been involved in illegal financial speculation?

5. What did Hamilton do when he was forced to choose between airing his dirty laundry or letting the charges go unanswered?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Blount Conspiracy



Portrayal of a fight on the floor of Congress between Vermont Representative Matthew Lyon and Roger Griswold of Connecticut. (Credit: Library of Congress)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

William Blount was a Continental Congressman and a signatory of the Constitution, but he also holds the dubious distinction of being the first politician to be expelled from the United States Senate. In 1796, while serving as Senator for the new state of Tennessee, Blount hatched a scheme to aid the British in seizing Spanish-held territory in what is now Louisiana and Florida. The audacious plan called for frontiersmen and Cherokee Indians to rise up against the Spanish and drive them off the Gulf Coast. The region would then become a British colony, opening it to settlers and allowing Blount—who owned huge tracts of Western land—to make a killing on his investments.

Unfortunately for Blount, his plot unraveled in 1797 after one of his conspiratorial letters found its way to President John Adams. That July, the Senate voted to expel him from its ranks, but a subsequent impeachment trial was dismissed due to lack of jurisdiction. The scandal did little to slow Blount's political career. Despite being labeled a scoundrel in Washington, he remained popular in Tennessee and was later elected to the state legislature and appointed speaker.

- 1) a person, organization, or country that has signed an agreement;
- 2) thought not to be completely true or not able to be trusted;
- 3) to make a plan, especially a secret plan;
- 4) not restrained by a sense of shame or propriety; rudely bold;
- 5) (formerly) a man living on a frontier, esp in a newly pioneered territory of the US;
- 6) a secret plan by a group of people to do something that is illegal or wrong, usually against a person or a government;
- 7) to break up or begin to fail;
- 8) the act of making a formal statement that a public official might be guilty of a serious offence in connection with his or her job, especially in the US;
- 9) a mean, immoral, or wicked person;
- 10) a body of persons vested with power to make, amend, and repeal laws.

II. Make sentences with these words.

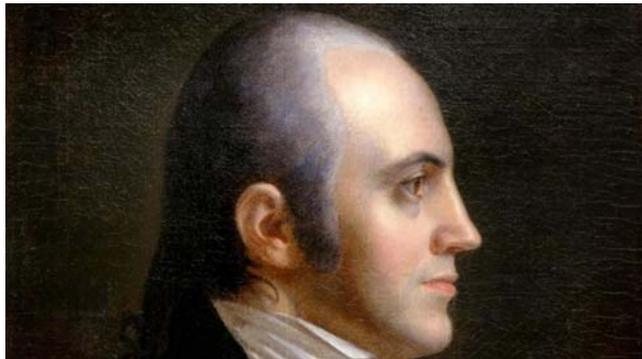
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What do you know about William Blount?
2. What scheme did Blount hatch in 1796 while serving as Senator for the new state of Tennessee?
3. What did the audacious plan call for frontiersmen and Cherokee Indians?
4. How did Blount's plot unravel?
5. Did the scandal slow Blount's political career?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Burr Conspiracy



Portrait of Aaron Burr. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Little more than a year after he killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel, former Vice President Aaron Burr was implicated in an outlandish scheme to seize lands in the American West. The details of the conspiracy remain mysterious to this day, but evidence suggests that Burr planned to invade Spanish territories on the frontier and establish a new western empire with himself as its leader. He may have also planned to incite a revolution to separate the western territories of the Louisiana Purchase from the United States. The plot began in earnest in 1805, when Burr traveled west and enlisted the help of U.S. General James Wilkinson, a notorious intriguer who also happened to be a Spanish spy. By the following year, he had assembled recruits and military equipment on an island in the Ohio River.

Whatever Burr's true plans were, they never got a chance to come to fruition. In late-1806, Wilkinson lost his nerve and betrayed the conspiracy to President Thomas Jefferson. Burr was arrested and put on trial for treason a few months later, but was ultimately acquitted on the grounds that his scheming did not constitute an "overt act" of war against the United States. The fallout from the conspiracy trial left Burr's political career in tatters. He spent several years in self-imposed exile in Europe, but eventually resettled in New York in 1812 and opened a law practice.

1) a formal fight in the past, using guns or swords, arranged between two people as a way of deciding an argument;

2) very odd, strange, or peculiar;

3) the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal;

4) to cause violent or unpleasant actions;

5) one who forms plots, or pursues an object by secret means;

6) a person who secretly collects and reports information about the activities of another country or organization;

7) an occasion when a plan or an idea begins to happen, exist, or be successful;

8) to be disloyal to someone who trusts you;

9) the crime of being disloyal to your country or its government, especially by helping its enemies or trying to remove the government using violence;

10) the condition of someone being sent or kept away from their own country, village, etc., especially for political reasons.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What scheme was former Vice President Aaron Burr implicated in little more than a year after he killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel?

2. Do the details of the conspiracy remain mysterious to this day?

3. What does evidence suggest?

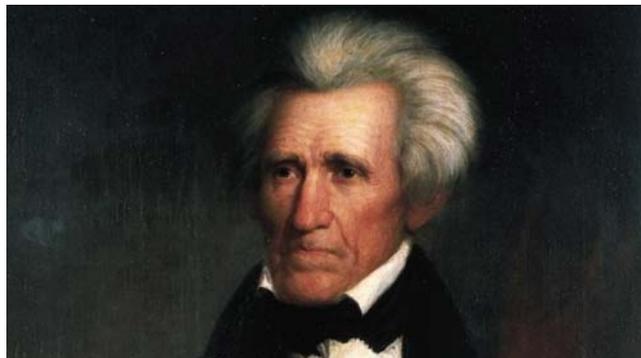
4. Who betrayed the conspiracy to President Thomas Jefferson in late 1806?

5. Did Burr eventually resettle in New York in 1812 and open a law practice after several years in self-imposed exile in Europe?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Petticoat Affair



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Though somewhat absurd by modern standards, the so-called “Petticoat Affair” cast a shadow over the first two years of Andrew Jackson’s presidency. The controversy centered on Margaret Eaton, an outspoken belle who had married Jackson’s secretary of war John Eaton just a few months after her first husband committed suicide. The speedy nuptials proved shocking to 19th century sensibilities, and when combined with Margaret’s vivacious personality, they earned her a reputation as a woman of “easy virtue” among the Washington elite. Her

fellow cabinet wives ostracized her from their social circles and spread gossip about her supposed lovers and past affairs. There were also whispers that Margaret's first husband had killed himself after learning of her infidelities with John Eaton.

President Andrew Jackson sympathized with Margaret Eaton—she supposedly reminded him of his deceased wife—and it wasn't long before he dove headlong into the controversy. He interrogated Eaton's critics and produced character witnesses to clear her name. He even called a special cabinet meeting where he pronounced her "as chaste as a virgin." When the Eaton rumors refused to die, Jackson became convinced that they were part of a larger plot to sow discord within his administration. In 1831, he resorted to extreme measures by firing or accepting the resignations of nearly all his cabinet members. The scandal also led to a final rupture with his vice president, John C. Calhoun, who was replaced by Martin Van Buren for Jackson's second term.

1) a piece of clothing like a thin skirt, which is worn under a skirt or dress;

2) expressing strong opinions very directly without worrying if other people are offended;

3) a beautiful and attractive woman or one who is beautifully dressed;

4) the act of killing yourself intentionally;

5) a person's marriage and marriage celebrations;

6) to avoid someone intentionally, or to prevent someone from taking part in the activities of a group;

7) a disagreement, often a public one, that involves different ideas or opinions about something;

8) a lack of agreement or feeling of trust between people;

9) the act of leaving a job or position and making a statement that you are doing this;

10) an occasion when something explodes, breaks, or tears.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What affair cast a shadow over the first two years of Andrew Jackson's presidency?

2. Who did the controversy center on?

3. Why did President Andrew Jackson sympathize with Margaret Eaton?

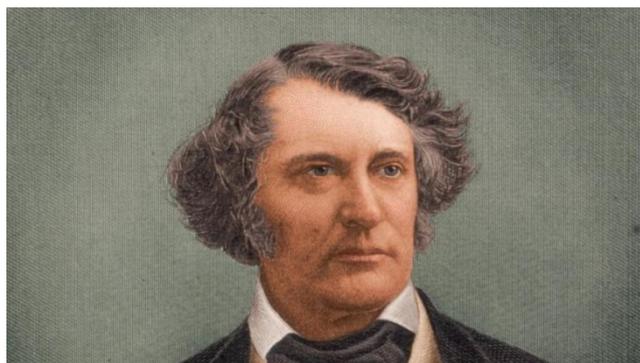
4. Why did he call a special cabinet meeting?

5. What did the scandal also lead to?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Sumner-Brooks Affair



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

House and Senate floor debates have always been heated, but 1856 marked one of the few occasions where they resulted in bloodshed. During a discussion of the Kansas-Nebraska Act—a law that allowed the citizens of those territories to vote on whether they would allow slavery—abolitionist Senator Charles Sumner gave a fiery speech in which he branded South Carolina’s Andrew Butler a “zealot” who was enamored with the “harlot” of slavery. The words came as a grave insult to Preston Brooks, a proslavery congressman who also happened to be Butler’s nephew. Just three days later, Brooks confronted Sumner in the Senate chamber and assaulted him with a metal-topped cane, repeatedly bludgeoning him over the head until the stick splintered into pieces.

The cane attack left Sumner so badly injured that he was forced to spend over three years in recovery. Brooks, meanwhile, was fined for assault and put under congressional investigation, but a measure to expel him from the House of Representatives failed to gather the required two-thirds majority. He voluntarily resigned in July 1856, only to be reelected by his constituents a few days later. In a preview of the divisions that would lead to the Civil War, the scandal saw Brooks simultaneously denounced in the North and hailed as a hero in the South. Supporters even sent him replacement canes, including one inscribed with the words “Hit Him Again.”

- 1) a great amount of killing and injury;
- 2) the activity of legally owning other people who are forced to work for or obey you;
- 3) a person whose views and actions are very extreme, especially in following a particular political or religious belief;
- 4) liking something a lot;
- 5) an old-fashioned and insulting word for a prostitute;
- 6) a long, thin stick used, especially in the past, to punish someone by hitting them;
- 7) to hit someone hard and repeatedly with a heavy weapon;
- 8) to force someone to leave a country, organization, or school;
- 9) to criticize something or someone strongly and publicly;

10) to write words in a book or carve (= cut) them on an object.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did House and Senate floor debates result in in 1856?
2. What happened during a discussion of the Kansas-Nebraska Act—a law that allowed the citizens of those territories to vote on whether they would allow slavery?
3. What did Brooks assault Sumner in the Senate chamber with just three days later?
4. How was Brooks punished?
5. What happened in a preview of the divisions that would lead to the Civil War?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Sickles murder case



*Homicide of Philip Barton Key II by Daniel Sickles.
(Credit: Library of Congress)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In early 1859, the nation was rocked by a grisly murder scandal involving New York Congressman Daniel Sickles. For months, Sickles' wife Teresa had been carrying out an affair with his close friend Philip Barton Key II, a prominent district attorney and the son of "The Star-Spangled Banner" author Francis Scott Key. The tryst was one of the worst kept secrets in Washington—Key was even known to wave a handkerchief outside his window

when he wanted Teresa's company—but Sickles remained oblivious until he received an anonymous letter that spelled out all the lurid details. The revelations sent him into a rage. A few days later, as multiple witnesses looked on, he approached Key outside the White House and shot him to death.

In the aftermath of the shooting, details about the murder and the Key affair were splashed across the front pages of newspapers around the country. The media circus only grew during Sickles' April 1859 murder trial, when his lawyers claimed their client had been "temporary insane" during his crime. It was the first time that such a defense had been rolled out in an American court, but it proved successful: after just 70 minutes of deliberation, a sympathetic jury acquitted Sickles of all charges. He went on to serve as a Union major general during the Civil War, and later lost his right leg to a cannonball at the Battle of Gettysburg.

- 1) a lawyer;
- 2) a meeting between two people who are having a romantic relationship, especially a secret one;
- 3) a square piece of cloth or paper used for cleaning the nose or drying the eyes when they are wet with tears;
- 4) not conscious of something, especially what is happening around you;
- 5) the act of making something known that was secret, or a fact that is made known;
- 6) (a period of) extreme or violent anger;
- 7) considering or discussing something;
- 8) a group of people who have been chosen to listen to all the facts in a trial in a law court and to decide if a person is guilty or not guilty, or if a claim has been proved;
- 9) a formal police statement saying that someone is accused of a crime;
- 10) a heavy metal or stone ball shot from a cannon.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was the nation rocked by in early 1859?
2. Who had Sickles' wife Teresa been carrying out an affair with?
3. Was the tryst one of the best kept secrets in Washington?
4. Did Sickles shoot Key to death outside the White House?
5. How was Sickles punished?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Crédit Mobilier Scandal



Uncle Sam directs those implicated in the Crédit Mobilier of America scandal to commit Hari-Kari. (Credit: Public domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On the eve of the 1872 election season, the New York Sun broke the story of an infamous boondoggle involving several business leaders, U.S. congressmen and even the vice president. The scandal took its name from Crédit Mobilier of America, a construction company contracted by the Union Pacific Railroad in the 1860s during the building of the transcontinental railroad. While it masqueraded as a legitimate business, Crédit Mobilier was actually a front company operated by a cabal of Union Pacific executives. By granting it exorbitantly lucrative contracts, the men were able to line their pockets with funds paid to Union Pacific by minor shareholders and the federal government. To keep officials from prying into the ring's affairs, Massachusetts Congressman Oakes Ames—a chief conspirator—dished out bribes of company stock to his fellow lawmakers on Capitol Hill.

By the time a disgruntled investor finally ratted the scheme out to the media in 1872, Crédit Mobilier had made its ringleaders at least \$23 million. The scandal's exposure led to a congressional investigation, but despite evidence that the corruption extended to more than a dozen politicians including vice president Schuyler Colfax, only two representatives—Ames and James Brooks—were officially censured. Neither man was expelled from the Congress, however, and no criminal charges were ever filed.

1) an unnecessary and expensive piece of work, especially one that is paid for by the public;

2) to pretend to be something or someone different; to live or act under false pretenses;

- 3) allowed according to law, or reasonable and acceptable;
- 4) a small group of people who make secret plans, especially in order to have political power;
- 5) someone in a high position, especially in business, who makes decisions and puts them into action;
- 6) (especially of a business, job, or activity) producing a lot of money;
- 7) a person who owns shares in a company and therefore gets part of the company's profits and the right to vote on how the company is controlled;
- 8) unhappy, annoyed, and disappointed about something;
- 9) the leader of a group of people who are doing something harmful or illegal;
- 10) to criticize someone officially.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the New York Sun break the story of an infamous boondoggle involving several business leaders, U.S. congressmen and even the vice president?
2. What construction company did the scandal take its name from?
3. Why did Massachusetts Congressman Oakes Ames—a chief conspirator—dish out bribes of company stock to his fellow lawmakers on Capitol Hill?
4. Who was officially censured as a result of the congressional investigation?
5. How many people were expelled from the Congress?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. The Whiskey Ring



Whiskey Ring cartoon by Thomas Nast. (Credit: Public domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

One of the most notorious scandals of the Gilded Age, the so-called “Whiskey Ring” involved a group of officials and alcohol distillers who plotted to defraud the government of its 70 cents-a-gallon tax on liquor. The scheme was as simple as it was lucrative. Through a system of bribes and blackmail, crooked federal agents and whiskey distillers would under-report whiskey sales, allowing them to skip out on tax payments and pocket the profits. The ring was first set up in 1871 by corrupt Republican Party officials in St. Louis, but it eventually extended to several other cities including Chicago, New Orleans and Milwaukee. By 1875, it was grossing as much as \$1.5 million per year in illicit funds.

The Whiskey Ring might have continued unabated if not the 1874 appointment of Benjamin Bristow as the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury. After catching wind of the scheme, he organized a secret investigation that exposed the fraud and led to indictments against several hundred liquor sellers and government officials. The scandal even reached as far as the administration of President Ulysses S. Grant, whose personal secretary Orville Babcock was caught in the dragnet. Babcock was only exonerated after Grant—who was not involved in the ring—gave a deposition swearing to his innocence.

- 1) a group of people who work together, often secretly in criminal activities;
- 2) famous for something bad;
- 3) a person or a company that makes strong alcoholic drinks by the process of distilling;
- 4) to take something illegally from a person, company, etc., or to prevent someone from having something that is legally theirs by deceiving them;
- 5) the act of getting money from people or forcing them to do something by threatening to tell a secret of theirs or to harm them;
- 6) dishonest;
- 7) a formal statement of accusing someone;
- 8) a method used by police to catch suspected criminals;
- 9) to show or state that someone or something is not guilty of something;
- 10) the fact that someone is not guilty of a crime.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What group of people did one of the most notorious scandals of the Gilded Age, the so-called “Whiskey Ring” involve?
2. What did they plot to defraud the government of?
3. Who was the ring first set up in 1871 by?
4. Who organized a secret investigation that exposed the fraud and led to indictments against several hundred liquor sellers and government officials?

5. Did the scandal even reach as far as the administration of President Ulysses S. Grant, whose personal secretary Orville Babcock was caught in the dragnet?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Вотергейтський інцидент

<https://amytytyc.medium.com>



У 1972 році у штабі кандидата в президенти від демократичної партії Джорджа Макговерна, розташованому у вашингтонському комплексі «Вотергейт», було затримано 5 осіб, які незаконно проникли в готель. Вони налаштували прослуховувальну апаратуру і, за деякими даними, фотографували внутрішні документи штабу демократів.

Дотепер не доведено зв'язок саме цього інциденту з адміністрацією Ніксона. Відомо, що в нього дійсно були плівки з нелегально записаними переговорами демократів, але те прослуховування завідомо не мало відношення до готелю «Вотергейт». Разом із тим, громадськість цікавило не тільки те, чи стояв Ніксон за конкретною групою з п'яти шпигунів, але й те, як він і його штаб реагували на події постфактум, зокрема й із точки зору об'єктивного їх розслідування.

У розслідуванні червневого інциденту й у супутній суспільній кампанії проти президента, що тривали понад два роки, були періоди активності й затишся. Кінець 1972 року, що ознаменувався тріумфальним переобранням Ніксона на другий термін, був для нього відносно спокійним.

17 червня 1972 року було заарештовано членів групи «водопровідників» із адміністрації Ніксона, причетних до незаконного підслухуван-

ня. Групу співробітників спецслужб так охрестили в пресі за те, що вони встановили підслуховувальну апаратуру в передвиборчому штабі демократів, розташованому у Вашингтонському готелі «Вотергейт», що призвело до інформаційних «витоків». У січні 1973 року розпочався суд над шпигунами, що проникли у «Вотергейт». У березні було сформовано сенатську комісію з Вотергейту, і судові слухання стали передавати по телебаченню на всю країну; вважається, що 85% тодішніх громадян США переглянули хоча б одне засідання. Паралельно з ініціативи демократів почалася низка розглядів діяльності інших чиновників республіканської адміністрації, пов'язаних не лише з прослуховуваннями або схожою діяльністю. Консультанта Білого дому Говарда Ганта суд визнав «технічним» організатором прослуховування й засудив його до 33 місяців ув'язнення.

У серпні Ніксон відмовився надати прокуратурі коментарі щодо системи урядового аудіоконтролю і записані в овальному кабінеті плівки, що документують розмови Ніксона з помічниками (про існування цих записів стало відомо суду зі свідчень деяких чиновників). Президент також наказав генеральному прокуророві Річардсону звільнити прокурора Кокса, що зробив такий запит. Річардсон відмовився підкоритися Ніксону й пішов у відставку разом зі своїм заступником у жовтні; ці відставки стали відомі як «суботня різанина». Це різко негативно позначилося на авторитеті президента. Тим часом ряд розслідувань, що торкнулися адміністрації Ніксона, дійшов і до його віце-президента Спіро Агню, що також подав у відставку в жовтні 1973 (у фінансовій справі, не пов'язаній із Вотергейтом).

6 лютого 1974 року Палата представників США ухвалила розпочати процедуру імпичменту Ніксона, але й тут Ніксон упирався у небажанні пред'являти слідству наявні в нього плівки, посилаючись на привілей виконавчої влади. Однак Верховний суд США у липні 1974 одноголосно визнав, що в президента немає таких привілеїв, і наказав йому негайно видати плівку прокуратурі.

Роль засобів масової інформації у виникненні й розвитку скандалу можна вважати визначальною. Американський дослідник Самуель Гантінгтон у доповіді, складеній для створеної в 70-х роках Тристоронньої комісії писав: «У двох найдраматичніших внутрішньополітичних конфліктах преса періоду Ніксонівської адміністрації — конфліктах, викликаних опублікуванням документів Пентагона й Вотергейтом, — засоби масової інформації країни кинули виклик і завдали поразки главі виконавчої влади. Преса фактично відіграла провідну роль у тому, що дотепер не вдавалося жодному окремо взятому інституту, угрупованню або комбінації інститутів у американській історії позбавити свого поста президента, що був вибраний менше двох років тому, домігшись підтримки більшості, що стала однією з найзначніших в американській історії»

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The nation's first major sex scandal began in 1791, when Secretary of the Treasury started an affair with a married woman named Maria Reynolds.

- a) Alexander Hamilton
- b) Oliver Wolcott Jr.
- c) Samuel Dexter
- d) Albert Gallatin

2. Unbeknownst to Hamilton, Reynolds' husband James had full knowledge of the dalliance, and he eventually contacted the founding father and demanded more than , which Hamilton paid.

- a) \$50,000 in hush money
- b) \$20,000 in hush money
- c) \$10,000 in hush money
- d) \$1,000 in hush money

3. William Blount was a Continental Congressman and a signatory of the Constitution, but he also holds the dubious distinction of being the first politician to be expelled from

- a) the United States High Court.
- b) the United States House of Commons.
- c) the United States Senate.
- d) the United States House of Representatives.

4. Despite being labeled a scoundrel in Washington, William Blount remained popular in and was later elected to the state legislature and appointed speaker.

- a) Alabama
- b) Arizona
- c) Texas
- d) Tennessee

5. Little more than a year after he killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel, former was implicated in an outlandish scheme to seize lands in the American West.

- a) Vice President Daniel D. Tompkins
- b) Vice President Elbridge Gerry
- c) Vice President George Clinton
- d) Vice President Aaron Burr

6. The details of the conspiracy remain mysterious to this day, but evidence suggests that Burr planned to invade on the frontier and establish a new western empire with himself as its leader.

- a) British territories
- b) Spanish territories
- c) Mexican territories
- d) Canadian territories

7. Though somewhat absurd by modern standards, the so-called “Petticoat Affair” cast a shadow over the first two years of

- a) Andrew Jackson’s presidency
- b) John Quincy Adams’ presidency
- c) Martin Van Buren’s presidency
- d) John Tyler’s presidency

8. The scandal also led to a final rupture with his, who was replaced by Martin Van Buren for Jackson’s second term.

- a) Vice President, Daniel D. Tompkins
- b) Vice President, Elbridge Gerry
- c) Vice President, George Clinton
- d) Vice President, John C. Calhoun

9. House and senate floor debates have always been heated, but 1856 marked one of the few occasions where they resulted in

- a) quarrel.
- b) accusation.
- c) bloodshed.
- d) abuse.

10. Brooks confronted Sumner in the Senate chamber and assaulted him with a,

- a) metal-topped cane
- b) sword
- c) rifle
- d) musket

11. In early 1859, the nation was rocked by a grisly murder scandal involving New York Congressman Daniel Sickles. For months, Sickles’ wife Teresa had been carrying out an affair with his close friend Philip Barton Key II, a prominent and the son of “The Star-Spangled Banner” author Francis Scott Key

- a) district artist
- b) district architect
- c) district scholar
- d) district attorney

12. Sickles went on to serve as a Union major general during the Civil War, and later lost his to a cannonball at the Battle of Gettysburg.

- a) right leg
- b) left leg
- c) right arm
- d) left arm

13. On the eve of the 1872 election season, the New York Sun broke the story of an infamous boondoggle involving several business leaders, U.S. congressmen and even

- a) the Secretary of the Treasury
- b) the Vice President

- c) the President
- d) the Senator

14. By the time a disgruntled investor finally ratted the scheme out to the media in 1872, Crédit Mobilier had made its ringleaders at least \$23 million.

- a) \$10 million
- b) \$13 million
- c) \$20 million
- d) \$23 million

15. One of the most notorious scandals of the Gilded Age, the so-called “Whiskey Ring” involved a group of officials and alcohol distillers who plotted to defraud the government of its on liquor.

- a) 40 cents-a-gallon tax
- b) 50 cents-a-gallon tax
- c) 60 cents-a-gallon tax
- d) 70 cents-a-gallon tax

16. The Whiskey Ring might have continued unabated if not the 1874 appointment of as the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury. After catching wind of the scheme, he organized a secret investigation that exposed the fraud and led to indictments against several hundred liquor sellers and government officials.

- a) Benjamin Bristow
- b) Oliver Wolcott Jr.
- c) Samuel Dexter
- d) Albert Gallatin

UNIT X
8 Astonishing Ancient Sites in the Americas

<https://www.history.com/news/8-astonishing-ancient-sites-in-the-americas>

1. The Pyramid of the Sun



The Pyramid of the Sun in Teotihuacan, Mexico.
www.infinitahighway.com.br/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Latin America's answer to the Great Pyramid of Giza, the Pyramid of the Sun is located in the ancient city of Teotihuacan near Mexico City. Constructed around 200 A.D. by an enigmatic pre-Aztec civilization, the monument stands over 200 feet tall and is roughly 700 feet wide, which would have made it one of the largest structures in ancient North America. Excavations in the 1970s revealed that the pyramid sits atop a 300-foot cave-tunnel leading to a four-winged chamber. More recently, archaeologists have discovered that the tunnel complex includes caches of pottery and sacrificial remains, which suggest that it once served as a spiritual shrine or royal tomb. Along with the nearby Pyramid of the Moon, the Pyramid of the Sun would have dominated the skyline of Teotihuacan during the first millennium A.D. The city was mysteriously abandoned sometime around the seventh century, but at its peak it may have had as many as 100,000 inhabitants.

- 1) to put or build something in a particular place;
- 2) mysterious and difficult to understand;
- 3) human society with its well developed social organizations, or the culture and way of life of a society or country at a particular period in time;
- 4) a unit of measurement, equal to twelve inches or 0.3048 metres;
- 5) the action of excavating something, especially an archaeological site;
- 6) a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff, or mountain, or one that is underground;
- 7) a long passage under or through the ground, especially one made by people;

8) a number of things that have been hidden, especially weapons, or the place where they have been hidden;

9) a place that is connected with a holy event or holy person, and that people visit to pray;

10) a shape or pattern made against the sky, especially by buildings.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was Latin America's answer to the Great Pyramid of Giza?

2. Where is the Pyramid of the Sun located?

3. Who was the Pyramid constructed by?

4. What did excavations in the 1970s reveal?

5. Did the tunnel complex once serve as a spiritual shrine or a royal tomb?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. San Agustín



"Guardian statues" at San Agustín.

DEA Picture Library/De Agostini/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

According to UNESCO, Colombia's San Agustín boasts the largest collection of megalithic sculptures in all of South America. The site consists of a massive necropolis strewn with some 40 burial mounds and 600 stone statues fashioned from volcanic rock. The statues range in height from only a few inches to around 20 feet, and depict grotesque monsters, club-wielding warriors and animals such as eagles, jaguars and frogs. The vast majority of the monuments date to between the first and eighth centuries A.D., but little is known about what significance they may have had for the ancient northern Andean culture that made them. A Spanish friar who saw the statues in the 1750s famously concluded that their fearsome imagery must have been the work of the devil, but

modern scholars tend to believe they were designed to serve as guardians for the people buried in the surrounding tombs.

- 1) something you are proud of and like to tell people about;
- 2) relating to megaliths (= ancient large stones, sometimes forming a group or circle), or the period when these were important;
- 3) an ancient cemetery (= piece of ground where people are buried);
- 4) to scatter things over a surface;
- 5) a large pile of earth, stones, etc. like a small hill;
- 6) strange and unpleasant, especially in a silly or slightly frightening way;
- 7) a large wild animal of the cat family that lives in Central and South America;
- 8) a member of a religious group of men who often work as teachers;
- 9) pictures or words that are used to represent something, for example a situation;
- 10) a powerful evil force and the enemy of God in Christianity and Judaism.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What does Colombia's San Agustín boast according to UNESCO?
2. What does the site consist of?
3. What period of time do the vast majority of the monuments date to?
4. What did a Spanish friar who saw the statues in the 1750s famously conclude?
5. What do modern scholars tend to believe?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Nazca Lines



Spider figure at the Nazca lines.
Danita Delimont/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the high desert of southern Peru lie the Nazca Lines, a collection of bewildering geoglyphs that were etched into the arid landscape as many as 2,500 years ago. The drawings extend over a 200 square mile area and include everything from geometric shapes and swirls to representations of animals such as a hummingbird, a spider, a monkey and a killer whale. The gargantuan art gallery was most likely the work of the ancient Nazca people, who made the lines by clearing away a top crust of dark-colored rocks to reveal a layer of white sand. Why they did so, however, is a matter of considerable debate. Some researchers believe the drawings were connected to rituals involving rain, while others argue they may have had an astronomical function. Still others think they served as a ceremonial route walked by pilgrims on their way to a temple or religious site.

- 1) an area, often covered with sand or rocks, where there is very little rain and not many plants;
- 2) confused and uncertain;
- 3) a large pattern in the ground, designed to be seen from a distance;
- 4) to cut a pattern, picture, etc., in a surface;
- 5) very dry and without enough rain for plants;
- 6) a twisting, circular shape;
- 7) a small brightly coloured bird found in America, especially Central and South America. It has a long thin beak and powerful narrow wings that can move very fast;
- 8) huge; enormous;
- 9) a way from one place to another;
- 10) a person who makes a journey to a holy place for a religious reason.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When and where were the bewildering geoglyphs etched into the arid landscape?
2. What animals do the drawings represent?
3. How did the ancient Nazca people make the lines?
4. Why did they do so?
5. What do the researchers think about those drawings?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Cliff Palace



*Cliff Palace at Mesa Verde.
SShepard/Getty Images*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Nestled in Mesa Verde National Park in Colorado, the 800-year-old Cliff Palace is the largest and most famous settlement of the Ancestral Puebloans, a civilization that once inhabited the Four Corners region of the American Southwest. The imposing cliff dwelling was built from sandstone bricks, wooden beams and mortar, and includes some 150 rooms and towers as well as two-dozen circular meeting rooms, or kivas. As many as 100 people called the fortress home during the 13th century A.D., but the Puebloans abandoned it just a few decades later, most likely because of a prolonged drought. Cliff Palace became a ghost town and remained unknown to non-natives until 1888, when a pair of ranchers happened upon it while looking for stray cattle.

- 1) a high area of land with a very steep side, especially one next to the sea;
- 2) having an appearance that looks important or causes admiration;
- 3) a house or place to live in;
- 4) a type of rock formed from sand;
- 5) a long, thick piece of wood, metal, or concrete, especially used to support weight in a building or other structure;
- 6) a mixture of sand, water, and cement or lime that is used to fix bricks or stones to each other when building walls;
- 7) a tall, narrow structure, often square or circular, that either forms part of a building or stands alone;
- 8) a large underground or partly underground room in a Pueblo village, used chiefly for religious ceremonies;
- 9) a long period when there is little or no rain;
- 10) someone who owns or works on a ranch.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Is the 800-year-old Cliff Palace the largest and most famous settlement of the Ancestral Puebloans?
2. Where is it situated?
3. What was the imposing cliff dwelling built from?
4. What does it include?
5. How many people called the fortress home during the 13th century A.D.?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Joya de Cerén



*Archaeological site at Joya de Cerén.
Luis Davilla/Getty Images*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Though not the most spectacular architectural site in the Americas, El Salvador's Joya de Cerén is almost certainly among the best preserved. Known as "the Pompeii of the New World," the small Mayan farming village was entombed in 17 feet of ash during a volcanic eruption around 600 A.D. Like its more famous Italian counterpart, it was effectively frozen in time, creating a fascinating snapshot of daily life in Pre-Hispanic Central America. Since its rediscovery in the 1970s, archeologists have unearthed several thatch-roof structures as well as a plaza and a communal sweat bath. They have also found scores of everyday objects such as sleeping mats, jade axes and food jars. There are no human remains at Cerén—its 200 residents seem to have fled before the volcano blew—but the eruption did preserve some of their footprints. There are even ash imprints of the corn stalks that once grew in the surrounding gardens.

- 1) very exciting to look at;
- 2) to protect from decay or dissolution; maintain;
- 3) to bury or permanently trap by something;
- 4) the soft grey or black powder that is left after a substance, especially tobacco, coal, or wood, has burned;

- 5) the way that a particular figure or set of figures gives an understanding of a situation at a particular time;
- 6) straw or reeds used to make roofs;
- 7) bright green in colour;
- 8) a mark made by a foot or shoe;
- 9) the mark left by an object being pressed into or onto something;
- 10) the main stem of a plant, or the narrow stem that joins leaves, flowers, or fruit to the main stem of a plant.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Is El Salvador's Joya de Cerén the most spectacular architectural site in the Americas?
2. Why is it famous?
3. When was the small Mayan farming village known as "the Pompeii of the New World" entombed in 17 feet of ash?
4. What have the archeologists unearthed since its rediscovery in the 1970s?
5. Are there any human remains at Cerén?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Tiwanaku



*Faces on wall of Tiwanaku.
JTB/UIG/Getty Images*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Situated more than 12,500 feet above sea level near Bolivia's Lake Titicaca, Tiwanaku is a mystifying complex of temples, pyramids and statues that was once the capital and spiritual center of the ancient Tiwanaku culture. The city reached its peak during the first millennium A.D., when numerous monumental structures were erected near the moat-enclosed city center. Two of the most important were the Akapana pyramid and the Kalasasaya temple, the latter of which features a "Gate of the Sun" protected by a frieze of a deity brandishing a pair of staffs. Pumapunku, another major ruin, lies outside the city center and

consists of several platforms, plazas and stairways. The Tiwanaku complex is famous for its monolithic stonework, which includes walls dotted with stone heads and statues hewn from sandstone and andesite blocks, some of which weighed over 100 tons. Many of these stone pieces were cut so precisely that they fit together perfectly without the use of mortar.

- 1) so strange or confusing that you cannot understand or explain it;
- 2) a period of 1,000 years;
- 3) to build something such as a building or wall;
- 4) a long, wide hole that is dug all the way around a place such as a castle and usually filled with water, to make it more difficult to attack;
- 5) is a structure like a door which is used at the entrance to a field, a garden, or the grounds of a building;
- 6) a decoration that goes along the top of the walls of a room or a building;
- 7) to wave something in the air in a threatening or excited way;
- 8) a long, strong stick held in the hand that is used as a support when walking, as a weapon, or as a symbol of authority;
- 9) very large, solid, and impressive;
- 10) a fine-grained tan or grey volcanic rock consisting of plagioclase feldspar, esp. andesine, amphibole, and pyroxene.

II. Make sentences with these words.

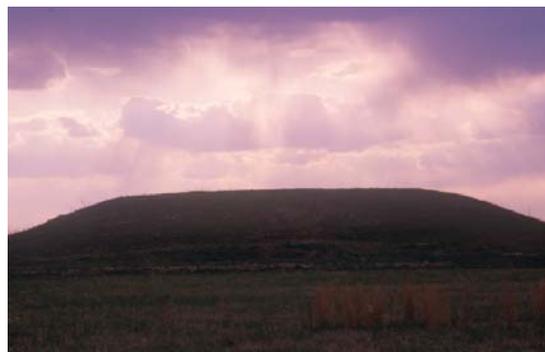
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Where is Tiwanaku situated?
2. Was Tiwanaku the capital and spiritual center of the ancient Tiwanaku culture?
3. What were two of the most important monumental structures?
4. What does Pumapunku, another major ruin consist of?
5. What is the Tiwanaku complex famous for?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. Cahokia



*The prehistoric Cahokia Mounds.
Fotosearch/Getty Images*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Long before Europeans were aware that the New World even existed, the outskirts of modern day St. Louis were home to a metropolis now known as Cahokia. Built by the ancient Mississippian culture, the 5 square mile site reached its peak sometime around 1100 A.D., when it may have supported a population of 10,000-20,000 people—roughly the same as London. The city included sprawling public plazas and residential neighborhoods, but its most striking feature was its roughly 120 terraced earthen mounds, which often served as tomb complexes or platforms for important buildings. The largest, the so-called “Monks Mound,” still stands some 100 feet tall and was once topped by a temple or palace. Excavations at Cahokia have revealed evidence of human sacrifice as well as crafted stone figurines and a palisade solar calendar dubbed “Woodhenge,” but since its residents kept no written records, archaeologists still know relatively little about their culture or religion. Even more mysterious is the settlement’s sudden decline: by the 1300s, it had been completely abandoned.

- 1) knowing that something exists, or having knowledge or experience of a particular thing;
- 2) a very large city, often the most important city in a large area or country;
- 3) spreading out in a straggling fashion;
- 4) the people living near one another; community;
- 5) to be on the upper surface of something, especially as a decoration;
- 6) to make known or show something that is surprising or that was previously secret;
- 7) the act of killing an animal or person and offering them to a god or gods, or the animal, etc. that is offered;
- 8) a small model of a human, usually made of clay or porcelain;
- 9) a strong fence made of pointed posts;
- 10) a decrease in the quality, quantity, or importance of something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Were the outskirts of modern day St. Louis home to a metropolis now known as Cahokia long before Europeans were aware that the New World existed?
2. When did the site reach its peak?
3. What was the most striking feature of the city?
4. Did the residents of Cahokia keep any written records?
5. Why is the settlement’s sudden decline so mysterious?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. Copán



Statuary art in Copan. PHAS/UIG/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Famed for its exquisite hieroglyphs and stonework, the ancient Mayan city of Copán sits in modern day Honduras near the border with Guatemala. The site began its life as a small agricultural settlement in the B.C. era, but it reached its zenith between the fifth and ninth centuries A.D., when it was ruled by a dynasty of 16 different kings. During that time, the city center was expanded to include numerous plazas, staircases, pyramids and stone temples, many of which were painted a striking shade of red. One of the site's most famous monuments is the so-called "Hieroglyphic Stairway," a 63-step staircase carved with over 2,000 individual glyphs—more than in any known Mayan inscription. There are also several stone steles and altars adorned with images of the city's rulers and descriptions of its history. Copán may have had some 20,000 residents at its peak, but it went into decline in the eighth century after its 13th king was captured and beheaded during a conflict with a rival kingdom. The city was subsequently abandoned and remained largely unexplored until the 1800s.

- 1) extremely beautiful and very delicately made;
- 2) a picture or symbol used to represent a word or part of a word, especially in the ancient Egyptian writing system;
- 3) the best or most successful point or time;
- 4) very unusual or easily noticed, and therefore attracting a lot of attention;
- 5) a type or degree of a colour;
- 6) a passage that contains a set of steps;
- 7) a pictograph or other symbolic character or sign, esp. when cut into a surface or carved in relief;
- 8) an upright stone slab or column decorated with figures or inscriptions, common in prehistoric times;
- 9) a holy table in a church or temple;
- 10) to cut off someone's head as a punishment.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Where is the ancient Mayan city of Copán situated?
2. How did the site begin its life?
3. When did it reach its zenith?
4. What is one of the site's most famous monuments?
5. What was the population of Copán at its peak?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Визначні місця США

<https://ne-np.facebook.com> ›



В Америці є все це: від достатку пляжів уздовж двох океанів до найвищих гірських вершин на континенті, як і найбільші столиці та мегаполіси в світі. Саме тому ви можете вибрати серед незліченних місць призначення, насолоджуючись незабутніми канікулами в США. Крім того, дивовижна біорізноманітність і вражаючі краєвиди природи створюють неймовірний сплав з пам'ятками історії та архітектури. Два представники списку Природничих Чудес Світу, найвищі будівлі – ось лише кілька прикладів. А відмінна інфраструктура пропонує кращі можливості для проживання і екскурсій. Радимо Вам відвідати принаймні декілька з 10 кращих пам'яток США, обов'язкових для відвідин.

Національний парк Брайс Каньйон розташований в південній Юті. Тут Ви можете зустрітися з мільярами захоплюючих пейзажів і величких гірських формувань – Худу. Вони створені багато років тому під впливом сил ерозії води і вітру, тому осадові породи набувають незвичайних форм, таких, як стовпи, арки, і т.п.

Гірський пейзаж Аляски – ще одна неймовірна природна пам'ятка в цій колекції красивих місць США. Найбільш північна частина США –

природне дорогоцінне каміння, особливо протягом зими. В оточенні казки з незліченними надихаючими перспективами білих піків, абсолютно прозорих синіх річок, мальовничих міст і пишних лісистих місцевостей можна забути про реальність.

Золоті Ворота Сан-Франциско – культовий міст і один з найкрасивіших технічних шедеврів в штаті Каліфорнія. Він розташований в затоці Сан-Франциско і з'єднує два півострова. Голден Гейт Брідж був побудований в четвертому десятилітті 20-го сторіччя – це незабутня і одна з найбільш пізнаваних пам'яток США, завдяки його величезному проміжку, червонуватим відтінкам і унікальним формам.

На одному з безлічі сценічних та екзотичних Північних Островів Тихого океану і Гаваїв Ви можете зіткнутися з дійсно незабутнім досвідом тропічних канікул. Захопіться вражаючим краєвидом Узбережжя Пали, яке є найкрасивішим природним об'єктом на острові Кауаї. Це один з найбільш західних Гавайських островів, який відомий його природним достатком і неперевершеним тропічним біорізноманіттям.

Нью-Йорк – один з найбільших мегаполісів в світі, так само, як найбільш густонаселене місто в США. Це дуже значне місто, і це стосується всього, що оточує Вас в Нью-Йорк Сіті. Одна з найбільших пам'яток Нью-Йорка – це незліченне яскраве світло гігантських хмарочосів в Манхеттені, який створює таку чарівну суміш вогнів і квітів, що перетворюють ніч на день.

Лас Вегас – ще одне американське місто-гігант, де вночі може бути світліше, ніж удень. Це культове місто відоме своїми гігантськими готелями і всевітньо відомими казино. Вночі Гральна столиця світу купається в яскравому зачаруванні незліченного нічного освітлення.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. Latin America's answer to the Great Pyramid of Giza, is located in the ancient city of Teotihuacan near Mexico City.

- a) the Pyramid of the Moon
- b) the Pyramid of the Crescent
- c) the Pyramid of the Sun
- d) the Pyramid of the Star

2. Constructed around 200 A.D. by an enigmatic, the monument stands over 200 feet tall and is roughly 700 feet wide, which would have made it one of the largest structures in ancient North America.

- a) pre-Aztec civilization
- b) pre-Incan Civilizationcivilization
- c) pre-Maya civilization
- d) pre-Roman civilization

3. According to UNESCO, Colombia's San Agustín boasts the largest collection of megalithic sculptures in all of

- a) Africa
- b) Asia
- c) North America
- d) South America

4. The statues range in height from only a few inches to around 20 feet, and depict grotesque monsters, club-wielding warriors and animals such as eagles, jaguars and

- a) lions
- b) tigers
- c) frogs
- d) lizards

5. In the of southern Peru lie the Nazca Lines, a collection of bewildering geoglyphs that were etched into the arid landscape as many as 2,500 years ago.

- a) high desert
- b) high mountains
- c) high plateau
- d) high cliffs

6. Some researchers think the lines served as a ceremonial route walked on their way to a temple or religious site.

- a) by monks
- b) by warriors
- c) by nobility
- d) by pilgrims

7. Nestled in Mesa Verde National Park, the 800-year-old Cliff Palace is the largest and most famous settlement of the Ancestral Puebloans

- a) in Nevada
- b) in Arizona
- c) in Colorado
- d) in Texas

8. Cliff Palace became and remained unknown to non-natives until 1888, when a pair of ranchers happened upon it while looking for stray cattle.

- a) a ghost town
- b) a hidden town
- c) a lost town
- d) sacred town

9. Though not the most spectacular architectural site in the Americas, El Salvador's Joya de Cerén is almost certainly among

- a) the least preserved
- b) the best preserved
- c) the best discovered
- d) the least discovered

10. There are no human remains at Cerén—its 200 residents seem to have fled before the volcano blew—but the eruption did preserve some of their

- a) pottery
- b) footprints
- c) furniture
- d) statues

11. Tiwanaku reached its peak during, when numerous monumental structures were erected near the moat-enclosed city center.

- a) the first millennium A.D.
- b) the second millennium A.D.
- c) the first millennium B.C.
- d) the second millennium B.C.

12. Two of the most important structures were the Akapana pyramid and the Kalasasaya temple, the latter of which features protected by a frieze of a deity brandishing a pair of staffs.

- a) a “Gate of the Moon”
- b) a “Gate of the Paradise”
- c) a “Gate of the Sun”
- d) a “Gate of the Sky”

13. Long before Europeans were aware that even existed, the outskirts of modern day St. Louis were home to a metropolis now known as Cahokia.

- a) the New World
- b) Australia
- c) Far East
- d) Near East

14. Built by the ancient Mississippian culture, the 5 square mile site reached its peak sometime around 1100 A.D., when it may have supported a population of 10,000-20,000 people—roughly the same

- a) as Washington
- b) as Beijing
- c) as London
- d) as Boston

15. Famed for its exquisite hieroglyphs and stonework, the ancient Mayan city of Copán sits in modern day Honduras near the border with

- a) Nicaragua
- b) Mexico
- c) El Salvador
- d) Guatemala

16. Between the fifth and ninth centuries A.D., the city center was expanded to include numerous plazas, staircases, pyramids and stone temples, many of which were painted

- a) a striking shade of green
- b) a striking shade of blue
- c) a striking shade of red
- d) a striking shade of purple

UNIT XI

8 Mysterious Underground Cities

https://www.history.com/news/8-mysterious-underground-cities?li_source=LI&li_medium=m2m-rcw-history

1. Derinkuyu



Derinkuyu Underground City is an ancient multilevel underground city in the Derinkuyu district in Nevsehir Province, Turkey. (Credit: ralucahphotography.ro/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The volcanic rock landscape of Turkey's Cappadocia region is pockmarked with several different underground cities, but perhaps none is as vast or as impressive as Derinkuyu. This labyrinthine complex dates to around the 8th century B.C. and was most likely built to serve as a refuge during periods of war and invasion. With this in mind, its 18-story interior was a self-contained metropolis that included ventilation shafts, wells, kitchens, schoolrooms, oil presses, a bathhouse, a winery and living space for some 20,000 people. When threatened by attack, each level of the city could be sealed off behind a collection of monolithic stone doors. Historians believe that the Hittites or the Phrygians were among Derinkuyu's earliest builders, but it was later occupied and expanded by a host of other groups including Byzantine-era Christians, who left behind a collection of underground frescoes and chapels. Despite its long history, the city wasn't rediscovered until the 1960s, when a local man stumbled upon some its tunnels while renovating his home.

- 1) of or from a long time ago, having lasted for a very long time;
- 2) coming from or connected with a volcano;
- 3) used to describe something that has a lot of parts and is therefore confusing;
- 4) (a place that gives) protection or shelter from danger, trouble, unhappiness, etc.;

- 5) an occasion when an army or country uses force to enter and take control of another country;
- 6) the movement of fresh air around a closed space, or the system that does this;
- 7) a deep hole in the ground from which you can get water, oil, or gas;
- 8) (a picture made by) painting on wet plaster on a wall or ceiling;
- 9) a room that is part of a larger building and is used for Christian worship;
- 10) a long passage under or through the ground, especially one made by people.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What underground city is the most important one in Turkey?
2. Why was this labyrinthine complex that dates to around the 8th century B.C. built?
3. With this in mind, its 18-story interior was a self-contained metropolis that included ventilation shafts, wells, kitchens, schoolrooms, oil presses, a bathhouse, a winery and living space for some 20,000 people, wasn't it?
4. What do historians think about Derinkuyu's earliest builders?
5. When was the city rediscovered?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Naours



A tourist takes a picture inside the Naours underground city. (Credit: FRANCOIS NASCIMBENI/AFP/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Located in northern France, the underground city of Naours includes two miles of tunnels and more than 300 man-made rooms—all of them hidden some 100 feet beneath a forested plateau. The site began its life around the third century A.D. as part of a Roman quarry, but it was later expanded into a subterranean village after locals began using it as a hiding place during the wars and invasions of the Middle Ages. At its peak, it had enough room for 3,000 inhabitants and included its own chapels, stables, wells and bakeries. The

Naours caves were later sealed off for decades before being reopened in the 19th century as a tourist attraction. They became a popular sightseeing spot during World War I, and modern visitors can still see more than 2,000 pieces of graffiti left behind by Allied soldiers, many of whom fought nearby at the [Battle of the Somme](#).

- 1) a large flat area of land that is high above sea level;
- 2) a place where something is, was, or will be built, or where something happened, is happening, or will happen;
- 3) a large artificial hole in the ground where stone, sand, etc. is dug for use as building material;
- 4) under the ground;
- 5) a building in which horses are kept;
- 6) a place where bread and cakes are made and sometimes sold;
- 7) something that makes people want to go to a place or do a particular thing;
- 8) the activity of visiting interesting places, especially by people on holiday;
- 9) writings or drawings made on surfaces in public places;
- 10) connected by a political or military agreement.

II. Make sentences with these words.

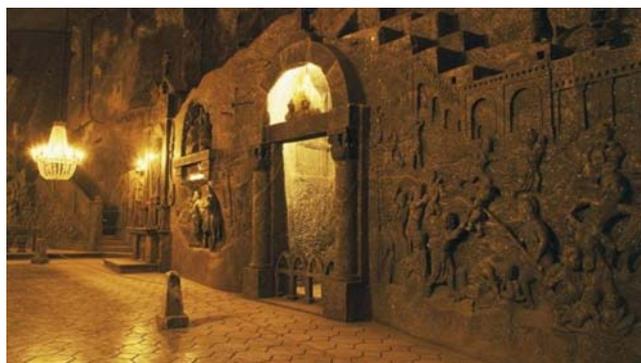
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How many tunnels and man-made rooms does the underground city of Naours include?
2. Did the site begin its life around the third or the fifth century A.D?
3. How did the locals use Naours during the wars and invasions of the Middle Ages?
4. When were the Naours caves reopened as a tourist attraction?
5. When did the caves become a popular sightseeing spot?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Wieliczka Salt Mine



*Chapel in the cathedral carved out of the rock salt in Wieliczka salt mine.
(Credit: DeAgostini/Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Also known as the “Underground Salt Cathedral,” Poland’s Wieliczka Salt Mine is a massive subterranean complex of rooms, passageways and statues located on the outskirts of Krakow. The site dates to the 1200s, when miners first descended beneath the earth’s surface to find rock salt. In the centuries that followed, they slowly carved the mine into a warren of galleries and tunnels that extended more than 1,000 feet underground. When they weren’t digging for “white gold,” the workers also used the mine’s salt crystal deposits to build a stunning collection of chapels, chandeliers, statues and bas reliefs, including a detailed replica of Da Vinci’s “The Last Supper.” The Wieliczka mine stopped producing salt in 2007 after some 700 years in operation, but it remains a popular tourist attraction in Poland. It’s also home to a health spa that touts the therapeutic properties of the mine’s salt-rich microclimate.

- 1) a common white substance found in sea water and in the ground, used especially to add flavour to food or to preserve it;
- 2) a large and important church, esp. one that is the center of a large area;
- 3) a usually long and narrow part of a building with rooms on one or both sides, or a covered path that connects places;
- 4) an object made from a hard material, especially stone or metal, to look like a person or animal;
- 5) the areas that form the edge of a town or city;
- 6) a person who works in a mine;
- 7) to make something by cutting into especially wood or stone, or to cut into the surface of stone, wood, etc.;
- 8) a piece of a substance that has become solid, with a regular shape;
- 9) a decorative light that hangs from the ceiling and has several parts like branches for holding bulbs or, especially in the past, candles;
- 10) an exact copy of an object.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How do they call Poland’s Wieliczka Salt Mine?
2. Is Wieliczka Salt Mine a massive subterranean complex of rooms, passageways and statues located on the outskirts of Krakow or Warsaw?
3. How old is Poland’s Wieliczka Salt Mine?
4. How did the workers use the mine’s salt crystal deposits when they weren’t digging for “white gold”?
5. Why is this mine used as a health spa?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Lalibela



Low angle view of the orthodox rock-hewn church of Saint George, Lalibela. Lalibela is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. (Credit: Santiago Urquijo/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the 12th century A.D., a devout king ordered the construction of 11 eye-catching Christian churches in the Ethiopian village of Lalibela. This “New Jerusalem” is notable for having been fashioned from the top down: all of its churches were hewn from volcanic rock below the earth’s surface then hollowed out, giving them the appearance of having grown directly out of the ground. The most iconic building is the cross-shaped Church of Saint George, which was cut from a monolithic slice of stone inside a trench 100 feet deep. It was then connected to the rest of the complex via a network of underground passageways, hidden caves and catacombs. Legend has it that the construction of Lalibela took just 24 years, but many historians believe it was actually completed in phases over several centuries. The village is now considered a sacred site for the Ethiopian Orthodox Church, and its subterranean places of worship continue to draw as many as 100,000 pilgrims each year.

- 1) believing strongly in a religion and obeying all its rules or principles;
- 2) very famous or popular, especially being considered to represent particular opinions or a particular time;
- 3) a narrow hole that is dug into the ground;
- 4) a large system consisting of many similar parts that are connected together to allow movement or communication between or along the parts, or between the parts and a control centre;
- 5) a series of underground passages and rooms where bodies were buried in the past;
- 6) someone who writes about or studies history;
- 7) considered to be holy and deserving respect, especially because of a connection with a god;
- 8) (of beliefs, ideas, or activities) considered traditional, normal, and acceptable by most people;
- 9) the act of worshipping God or a god, often through praying or singing;

10) a person who makes a journey, often a long and difficult one, to a special place for religious reasons .

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did a devout king order the construction of 11 eye-catching Christian churches in the Ethiopian village of Lalibela?
2. What is this “New Jerusalem” notable for?
3. How was the cross-shaped Church of Saint George built?
4. How was it connected to the rest of the complex?
5. Did the construction of Lalibela take just 24 years or was it actually completed in phases over several centuries?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Beijing Underground City



A mural dedicated to the workers who dug the tunnels that later became the Beijing Underground City in Beijing, China. (Credit: Bryan Chan/Los Angeles Times/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the 1960s and 70s, as the threat of nuclear war loomed, the Chinese government ordered the construction of a mammoth fallout shelter beneath their capital of Beijing. Also known as Dixia Cheng, the hand-dug site was supposedly capable of safeguarding around one million people for up to four months. It consisted of fallout-proofed rooms and tunnels that snaked their way underground over an area of several dozen square miles. Certain passageways were reportedly large enough for tanks to pass through, while other housed purpose-built schools, hospitals, granaries and restaurants. There was even a skating rink and a 1,000-seat movie theater. While the Beijing bunker was never put to use, its decaying tunnels still exist today, hidden beneath the city’s homes and businesses. Most are sealed off, but they were briefly opened as a tourist attraction in the early 2000s.

- 1) a large picture that has been painted on the wall of a room or building;
- 2) a suggestion that something unpleasant or violent will happen, especially if a particular action or order is not followed;
- 3) being or using the power produced when the nucleus of an atom is divided or joined to another nucleus;
- 4) extremely large;
- 5) (a building designed to give) protection from bad weather, danger, or attack;
- 6) to protect something or somebody from harm;
- 7) a large building for storing grain;
- 8) a shelter, usually underground, that has strong walls to protect the people inside it from bullets or bombs;
- 9) becoming gradually damaged, worse, or less;
- 10) to prevent people from entering an area or building, often because it is dangerous.

II. Make sentences with these words.

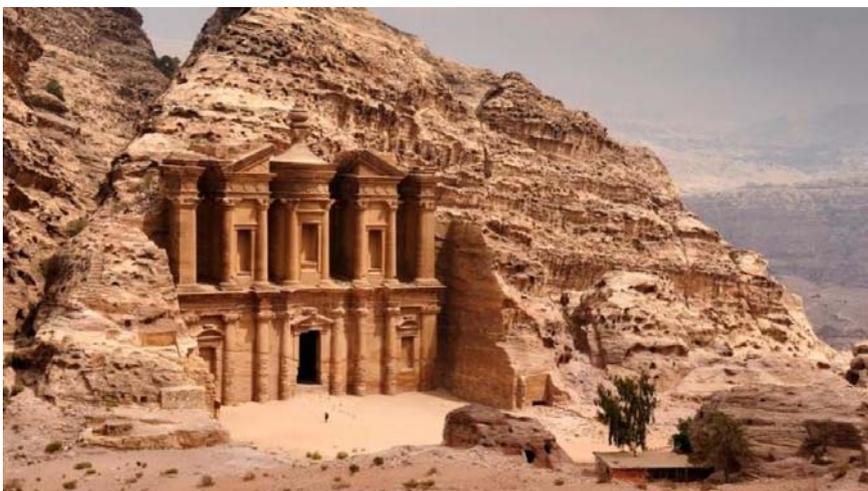
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who ordered the construction of a mammoth fallout shelter beneath their capital of Beijing in the 1960s and 70s?
2. How many people was Dixia Cheng, the hand-dug site supposedly capable of safeguarding?
3. What vehicles could pass through certain passageways?
4. Was there a skating rink or a swimming pool in Dixia Cheng?
5. When were some tunnels briefly opened as a tourist attraction?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Petra



A classic view of El Deir, The Monastery in Petra. (Credit: Nick Brundle Photography/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Famed for its cameo in the film “Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade,” Petra is an ancient caravan city tucked away in the mountains of southern Jordan. The site has been inhabited since prehistory, but it reached its peak some 2,000 years ago, when the ancient Nabataeans hand-chiseled the surrounding sandstone hillsides into a dazzling collection of tombs, banquet halls and temples. One of the most exquisite edifices is Al Khazneh, or “the Treasury,” which includes an ornamental façade that extends 130 feet up a rock face. Petra may have been home to 20,000 people at its height, but it was later abandoned sometime around the seventh century A.D. and wasn’t known to Europeans until the 1800s. Excavations at the site are still ongoing today, and it’s believed that the vast majority of its ruins may still lurk underground.

1) a brief but noticeable part, esp. in a movie, television program, or performance in a theater, usually by someone who is famous;

2) a group of people with vehicles or animals who travel together for safety through a dangerous area, esp. across a desert on camels;

3) inhabit - to live in a place;

4) a large formal meal for many people, often followed by speeches in honour of someone;

5) a large building, especially an impressive one;

6) the front of a building, especially a large or attractive building;

7) to reach, stretch, or continue;

8) to leave a place, thing, or person, usually for ever;

9) the act of removing earth that is covering very old objects buried in the ground in order to discover things about the past;

10) to exist although it is not always noticeable.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Where is Petra, an ancient caravan city situated?

2. When did the site reach its peak?

3. What does one of the most exquisite edifices Al Khazneh, or “the Treasury” include?

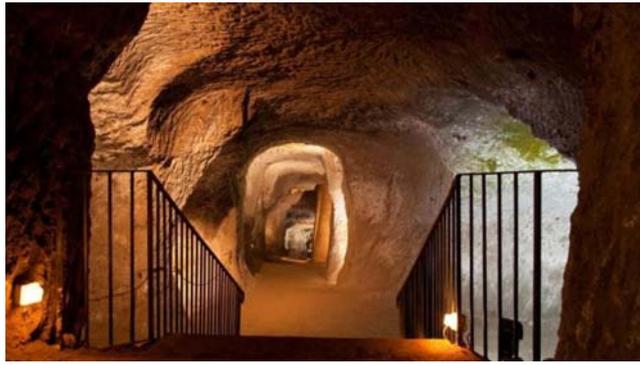
4. Was Petra that may have been home to 20,000 people at its height, abandoned sometime around the sixth or the seventh century A.D.?

5. Are excavations at the site still ongoing today?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. Orvieto



Underground Below The City Of Orvieto, Italy. (Credit: traveler1116/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Italian hilltop town of Orvieto is known for its white wines and picturesque architecture, but its most mysterious wonders lie underground. Beginning with the ancient Etruscans, generations of locals burrowed their way deep into the volcanic rock bluff on which the city was originally built. The subterranean maze was first carved to build wells and cisterns, but over the centuries it grew to include more than 1,200 interlocking tunnels, grottoes, and galleries. Some chambers include the remnants of Etruscan-era sanctuaries and medieval olive presses, while others show signs of having been used as storage places for wine or roosts for pigeons—a common local delicacy. Orvieto's underground city was also frequently employed as a hiding place during times of strife. As recently as World War II, people were still using certain sections as bomb shelters.

- 1) to dig a hole in the ground, especially to live in;
- 2) a cliff or very steep bank;
- 3) a complicated and confusing network of passages;
- 4) a small cave or an artificial structure that is like a cave, esp. one used for religious purposes;
- 5) protection or a safe place, especially for someone or something being chased or hunted;
- 6) a place, such as a branch of a tree, where birds rest or sleep;
- 7) a large, usually grey bird that is often seen in towns sitting on buildings in large groups, and is sometimes eaten as food;
- 8) something especially rare or expensive that is good to eat;
- 9) angry disagreement or violent actions;
- 10) a weapon that explodes and is used to kill or hurt people or to damage buildings.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What is the Italian hilltop town of Orvieto known for?

2. Why was the subterranean maze first carved?
3. What do some Orvieto's chambers include?
4. Was Orvieto's underground city frequently employed as a hiding place during times of strife or as a tourist attraction?
5. How were people using certain sections of Orvieto during World War II?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. Burlington



*The GPO exchange at the Central Government War Headquarters aka "Burlington."
(Credit: NJ/Wikimedia Commons)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the event of a Cold War-era nuclear strike, the most important members of the British government would have retreated to a 35-acre underground complex located 100 feet beneath the village of Corsham. This "Burlington Bunker," as it was codenamed, was first built in the 1950s from a series of existing tunnels and stone quarries. It contained office spaces, cafeterias, a telephone exchange, medical facilities and sleeping quarters—all of it designed to keep the British Prime Minister and some 4,000 other key government personnel alive during an emergency. There was even an in-house BBC studio that the PM could use to address the public. While never put into active use, the Burlington facility remained partially operational until 2004, when it was finally decommissioned and declassified.

- 1) the main offices of an organization such as the army, the police, or a business company;
- 2) anything that happens, especially something important or unusual;
- 3) a sudden and powerful hit or attack;
- 4) the group of people who officially control a country;
- 5) a restaurant where people choose what they want from the foods and drinks that are offered in a serving area and carry the items to a table after paying for them;
- 6) to make or draw plans for something, for example clothes or buildings;

7) the people who are employed in a company, organization, or one of the armed forces;

8) something dangerous or serious, such as an accident, that happens suddenly or unexpectedly and needs fast action in order to avoid harmful results;

9) a place, especially including buildings, where a particular activity happens;

10) to take equipment or weapons out of use.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Where would the most important members of the British government have retreated in the event of a Cold War-era nuclear strike?

2. When was this “Burlington Bunker,” as it was codenamed, first built?

3. What was it built from?

4. How many people could “Burlington Bunker” keep alive during an emergency?

5. When was the Burlington facility decommissioned and declassified?

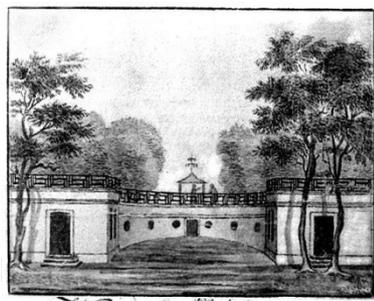
IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Таємничі підземелля Рівного

<https://euprostitir.org.ua> › stories



Рівне отримає атракційну візитівку європейського зразка – місто виграло грант Європейського Союзу на реалізацію проекту «Таємничі підземелля Рівного». На місці нещодавно розкопаного підземного міста у парку Шевченка постануть дві атракційні квест-кімнати з мультимедійним інтерактивним оснащенням.

Головна мета – зберегти та популяризувати історію і культурну спадщину Рівного. Перетворити це на захопливе дійство. Через квестову гру залучити до вивчення історії міста якомога більшу кількість його жителів, а також привабити більше туристів.

Фахівці зійшлися на думці, що об’єкт повинен максимально зберегти свою автентичність. Фінансова підтримка ЄС уможливить проведення робіт

провідними фахівцями з реставрації та музеєфікації задля консервації та захисту виявлених споруд від руйнування, а також створить можливості для проведення додаткових археологічних та історичних досліджень.

Довгий час про підземне місто, таємничі тунелі, якими помережено Рівне, лише здогадувались, переповідали історії. І, нарешті, легенда знайшла своє підтвердження. Після розчищення заваленого асфальту, дослідники та волонтери виявили підземні кімнати. Про підземні ходи у 1886 році писав у своїй повісті «Діти підземелля» і Володимир Короленко. Праобразом місця подій є саме Рівне – місто, де письменник жив і навчався. Місце, де знайдено підземелля, мало вхід в «середньовічний» тунель. Розповідають, що він з'явився через забаганку князя Станіслава Любомирського. В 1723 році у володіння Любомирських переходить місто Рівне. Княжа родина починає розводити комплекс на своєрідному штучному острові. Для полювання Любомирському розбудували розлогий «Сад розваг», а дорогою до нього – розкішний виноградник. Тож подекують, що князь вирішив під ним же й зробити винний льох. У кінці 1790-х років архітектор Жакоб Бургіньон на замовлення князя будує підземні кімнати. Більшість експертів сходиться на тому, що підземелля було перебудовано в різні часи. Його найстаріший фрагмент можна ідентифікувати 16-17 століттям.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a,b,c, or d.

1. The volcanic rock landscape of Turkey's Cappadocia region is pockmarked with several different, but perhaps none is as vast or as impressive as Derinkuyu.

- a) salt mines
- b) coal mines
- c) underground cities
- d) underground monasteries

2. Derinkuyu's 18-story interior was a self-contained metropolis that included ventilation shafts, wells, kitchens, schoolrooms, oil presses, a bathhouse, a winery and living space for some

- a) 200 people.
- b) 2,000 people.
- c) 20,000 people.
- d) 200,000 people.

3. Located in, the underground city of Naours includes two miles of tunnels and more than 300 man-made rooms—all of them hidden some 100 feet beneath a forested plateau.

- a) southern France
- b) northern France
- c) southern Italy
- d) northern Italy

4. The Naours caves became a popular sightseeing spot during World War I, and modern visitors can still see more than left behind by Allied soldiers

- a) 2,000 sculptures
- b) 2,000 pieces of pottery
- c) 2,000 pieces of weapons
- d) 2,000 pieces of graffiti

5. Also known as the “Underground Salt Cathedral,” Poland’s Wieliczka Salt Mine is a massive subterranean complex of rooms, passageways and statues located on the outskirts of

- a) Warsaw
- b) Krakow
- c) Sopot
- d) Gdansk

6. The Wieliczka mine stopped producing salt in operation, but it remains a popular tourist attraction in Poland.

- a) in 1987 after some 700 years
- b) in 1997 after some 700 years
- c) in 2007 after some 700 years
- d) in 2017 after some 700 years

7. In the 12th century A.D., a devout king ordered the construction of 11 eye-catching in the Ethiopian village of Lalibela.

- a) Christian monasteries
- b) Christian churches
- c) Buddhist temples
- d) Baptist churches

8. The most iconic building is the cross-shaped , which was cut from a monolithic slice of stone inside a trench 100 feet deep.

- a) Church of Saint David
- b) Church of Saint Patrick
- c) Church of Saint Andrew
- d) Church of Saint George

9. In the 1960s and 70s, as the threat of nuclear war loomed, the Chinese government ordered the construction of a mammoth fallout shelter beneath

- a) the city of Beijing
- b) the city of Shanghai
- c) the city of Chongqing
- d) the city of Tianjin

10. Also known as Dixia Cheng, the hand-dug site was supposedly capable of safeguarding for up to four months.

- a) around 500 people

- b) around 5 thousand people
- c) around one hundred thousand people
- d) around one million people

11. Famed for its cameo in the film “Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade,” Petra is an ancient caravan city tucked away in the mountains of southern

- a) Saudi Arabia
- b) Iraq
- c) Jordan
- d) Syria

12. Petra may have been home to 20,000 people at its height, but it was later abandoned sometime around the seventh century A.D. and wasn’t known to Europeans until

- a) the 1500s
- b) the 1800s
- c) the 1600s
- d) the 1700s

13. The Italian hilltop is known for its white wines and picturesque architecture, but its most mysterious wonders lie underground.

- a) town of Grosseto
- b) town of Orvieto
- c) town of Perugia
- d) town of Treviso

14. The subterranean maze was first carved to build wells and cisterns, but over the centuries it grew to include interlocking tunnels, grottoes, and galleries.

- a) more than 1,200
- b) more than 1,000
- c) more than 200
- d) more than 100

15. In the event of a Cold War-era nuclear strike, the most important members of the British government would have retreated to a 35-acre underground complex located 100 feet beneath the

- a) village of Snowhill
- b) village of Ombersley
- c) village of Grasmere
- d) village of Corsham

16. It contained office spaces, cafeterias, a telephone exchange, medical facilities and sleeping quarters—all of it designed to keep the British Prime Minister and alive during an emergency.

- a) some 3,000 other key government personnel
- b) some 1,000 other key government personnel
- c) some 4,000 other key government personnel
- d) some 2,000 other key government personnel

UNIT XII

8 Legendary Ancient Libraries

<https://www.history.com/news/8-impressive-ancient-libraries>

1. The Library of Ashurbanipal



Part of a clay tablet, Neo-Assyrian. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The world's oldest known library was founded sometime in the 7th century B.C. for the "royal contemplation" of the Assyrian ruler Ashurbanipal. Located in Nineveh in modern day Iraq, the site included a trove of some 30,000 cuneiform tablets organized according to subject matter. Most of its titles were archival documents, religious incantations and scholarly texts, but it also housed several works of literature including the 4,000-year-old "Epic of Gilgamesh." The book-loving Ashurbanipal compiled much of his library by looting works from Babylonia and the other territories he conquered. Archaeologists later stumbled upon its ruins in the mid-19th century, and the majority of its contents are now kept in the British Museum in London. Interestingly, even though Ashurbanipal acquired many of his tablets through plunder, he seems to have been particularly worried about theft. An inscription in one of the texts warns that if anyone steals its tablets, the gods will "cast him down" and "erase his name, his seed, in the land."

- 1) serious and quiet thought for a period of time;
- 2) a collection of valuable things;
- 3) a form of writing used for over 3,000 years until the 1st century BC in the ancient countries of Western Asia;
- 4) a thin, flat, often square piece of hard material such as wood, stone, or metal;
- 5) words that are believed to have a magical effect when spoken or sung;
- 6) the activity of stealing from shops during a violent event;
- 7) to discover something by chance, or to meet someone by chance;
- 8) an occasion when goods are stolen from a place, especially violently or during a war, or these stolen goods;
- 9) words that are written or cut in something;

10) to remove or destroy something, especially something that shows that that person or thing ever existed or happened.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When was the world's oldest known library founded?
2. How were 30,000 cuneiform tablets organized?
3. Were there any works of literature among the archival documents, religious incantations and scholarly texts?
4. Where are the majority of its contents kept nowadays?
5. How did Ashurbanipal acquire many of his tablets?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. The Library of Alexandria



The Burning of the Library of Alexandria, 1876. Private Collection. (Credit: Fine Art Images/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Following Alexander the Great's death in 323 B.C., control of Egypt fell to his former general Ptolemy I Soter, who sought to establish a center of learning in the city of Alexandria. The result was the Library of Alexandria, which eventually became the intellectual jewel of the ancient world. Little is known about the site's physical layout, but at its peak it may have included over 500,000 papyrus scrolls containing works of literature and texts on history, law, mathematics and science. The library and its associated research institute attracted scholars from around the Mediterranean, many of whom lived on site and drew government stipends while they conducted research and copied its contents. At different times, the likes of Strabo, Euclid and Archimedes were among the academics on site.

The great library's demise is traditionally dated to 48 B.C., when it supposedly burned after Julius Caesar accidentally set fire to Alexandria's harbor during a battle against the Egyptian ruler Ptolemy XIII. But while the

blaze may have damaged the library, most historians now believe that it continued to exist in some form for several more centuries. Some scholars argue that it finally met its end in 270 A.D. during the reign of the Roman emperor Aurelian, while others believe that it came even later during the fourth century.

- 1) the end of life;
- 2) to start a company or organization that will continue for a long time;
- 3) something that is very beautiful or valuable;
- 4) the way that something is designed or arranged;
- 5) a tall plant like a grass that grows in or near water, especially in North Africa, or paper made from this plant, especially by ancient Egyptians;
- 6) a long roll of paper or similar material with usually official writing on it;
- 7) a detailed study of a subject, especially in order to discover (new) information or reach a (new) understanding;
- 8) a particular amount of money that is paid regularly to someone;
- 9) the end of something that was previously considered to be powerful, such as a business, industry, or system;
- 10) an area of water next to the coast, often protected from the ocean by a thick wall, where ships and boats can shelter.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did former general Ptolemy I Soter, seek to establish in the city of Alexandria following Alexander the Great's death in 323 B.C.?
2. Do we know much about the Library of Alexandria physical layout?
3. Who conducted research in the library at different times?
4. Did Julius Caesar burn the library?
5. When did the library finally meet its end?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Library of Pergamum



Reconstruction of Pergamum. (Credit: De Agostini/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Constructed in the third century B.C. by members of the Attalid dynasty, the Library of Pergamum, located in what is now Turkey, was once home to a treasure-trove of some 200,000 scrolls. It was housed in a temple complex devoted to Athena, the Greek goddess of wisdom, and is believed to have comprised four rooms—three for the library’s contents and another that served as a meeting space for banquets and academic conferences. According to the ancient chronicler Pliny the Elder, the Library of Pergamum eventually became so famous that it was considered to be in “keen competition” with the Library of Alexandria. Both sites sought to amass the most complete collections of texts, and they developed rival schools of thought and criticism. There is even a legend that Egypt’s Ptolemaic dynasty halted shipments of papyrus to Pergamum in the hope of slowing its growth. As a result, the city may have later become a leading production center for parchment paper.

1) a series of rulers or leaders who are all from the same family, or a period when a country is ruled by them;

2) a building used for the worship of a god or gods in some religions;

3) to give your time or effort completely to something you believe in or to a person, or to use a particular amount of time or energy doing something;

4) the ability to use your knowledge and experience to make good decisions and judgments

5) a large formal meal for many people, often followed by speeches in honour of someone;

6) a large, formal meeting at which there are groups of talks on a particular subject, or a small, private meeting for discussion of a particular matter;

7) a person who writes descriptions of historical events as they happen;

8) to get a large amount of something, especially money or information, by collecting it over a long period;

9) a person, group, etc. competing with others for the same thing or in the same area;

10) the thin, dried skin of some animals that was used in the past for writing on, or a high-quality paper made to look like this.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was the Library of Pergamum constructed by?

2. Where was the library housed?

3. Why did the Library of Pergamum eventually become so famous?

4. Was there a room in a temple complex that served as a meeting space for banquets and academic conferences?

5. Is there a legend that Egypt’s Ptolemaic dynasty halted shipments of papyrus to Pergamum in the hope of slowing its growth?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Villa of the Papyri



The long-buried Villa of the Papyri opened to the public almost 2000 years after it was submerged in volcanic mud in Herculaneum. (Credit: Eric VANDEVILLE/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

While it wasn't largest library of antiquity, the so-called "Villa of the Papyri" is the only one whose collection has survived to the present day. Its roughly 1,800 scrolls were located in the Roman city of Herculaneum in a villa that was most likely built by Julius Caesar's father-in-law, Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus. When nearby Mount Vesuvius erupted in 79 A.D., the library was buried—and exquisitely preserved—under a 90-foot layer of volcanic material. Its blackened, carbonized scrolls weren't rediscovered until the 18th century, and modern researchers have since used everything from multispectral imaging to x-rays to try to read them. Much of the catalogue has yet to be deciphered, but studies have already revealed that the library contains several texts by an Epicurean philosopher and poet named Philodemus.

- 1) to cover or hide something completely;
- 2) earth that has been mixed with water;
- 3) the distant past (= a long time ago), especially before the sixth century
- 4) a large house with a big garden in a warm country or region;
- 5) documents written on papyrus;
- 6) to explode with flames and rocks coming out of it;
- 7) used for describing something that is so badly burnt that it is black in colour;
- 8) a type of radiation that can go through many solid substances, allowing hidden objects such as bones and organs in the body to be photographed;
- 9) a list of all the books, paintings, etc. that exist in a place;

10) to discover the meaning of something written badly or in a difficult or hidden way.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Was the so-called “Villa of the Papyri” the largest library of antiquity?
2. Where were its roughly 1,800 scrolls located?
3. Who was the villa most likely built by?
4. What happened when nearby Mount Vesuvius erupted in 79 A.D.?
5. How do modern researchers try to read blackened, carbonized scrolls?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Libraries of Trajan’s Forum



Trajan’s Forum. (Credit: John Harper/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Sometime around 112 A.D., the Emperor Trajan completed construction on a sprawling, multi-use building complex in the heart of the city of Rome. This Forum boasted plazas, markets and religious temples, but it also included one of the Roman Empire’s most famous libraries. The site was technically two separate structures—one for works in Latin, and one for works in Greek. The rooms sat on opposite sides of a portico that housed Trajan’s Column, a large monument built to honor the Emperor’s military successes. Both sections were elegantly crafted from concrete, marble and granite, and they included large central reading chambers and two levels of bookshelf-lined alcoves containing an estimated 20,000 scrolls. Historians are unsure of when Trajan’s dual library ceased to exist, but it was still being mentioned in writing as late as the fifth century A.D., which suggests that it stood for at least 300 years.

- 1) existing or reaching over a large area;
- 2) in ancient Rome, the area in the middle of the town used for public business;
- 3) an open, public area in a city or town, or a group of buildings with stores, often including an open, public area;
- 4) a place or event at which people meet in order to buy and sell things;
- 5) a covered entrance to a building, usually a large and impressive building, that is supported by columns;
- 6) to show great respect for someone, esp. in public;
- 7) to make objects, especially in a skilled way;
- 8) a very hard, grey, pink, or black rock, used for building;
- 9) a small space in a room, formed by one part of a wall being further back than the parts on each side;
- 10) to speak about something quickly, giving little detail or using few words.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the Emperor Trajan complete construction on a sprawling, multi-use building complex in the heart of the city of Rome?
2. What did this Forum boast?
3. What do you know about Trajan's Column?
4. What did Latin and Greek sections include?
5. When did Trajan's dual library cease to exist?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Library of Celsus



Library of Celsus. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

There were over two-dozen major libraries in the city of Rome during the imperial era, but the capital wasn't the only place that housed dazzling collections of literature. Sometime around 120 A.D., the son of the Roman consul Tiberius Julius Celsus Polemaeanus completed a memorial library to his father in the city of Ephesus (modern day Turkey). The building's ornate façade still stands today and features a marble stairway and columns as well as four statues representing Wisdom, Virtue, Intelligence and Knowledge. Its interior, meanwhile, consisted of a rectangular chamber and a series of small niches containing bookcases. The library may have held some 12,000 scrolls, but its most striking feature was no doubt Celsus himself, who was buried inside in an ornamental sarcophagus.

- 1) causing or likely to cause strong admiration;
- 2) an official chosen by a government to live in a foreign city, in order to take care of people from the official's own country who travel or live there, and to protect the trade interests of that government;
- 3) done to remember a person or people who have died;
- 4) having a lot of complicated decoration;
- 5) a type of very hard rock that has a pattern of lines going through it, feels cold, and can be polished to become smooth and shiny;
- 6) a passage in a public place with a set of steps that leads from one level to another;
- 7) a good moral quality in a person, or the general quality of being morally good;
- 8) shaped like a rectangle;
- 9) a hollow in a wall, especially one made to put a statue (= artistic object) in so that it can be seen;
- 10) a stone coffin, often decorated, that was used in ancient times.

II. Make sentences with these words.

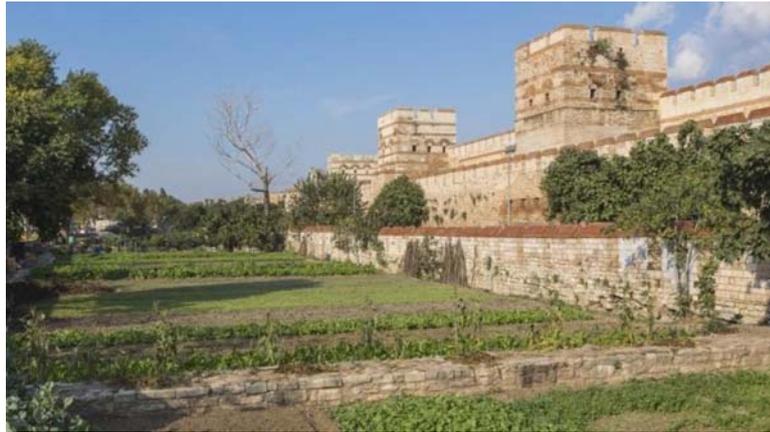
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How many libraries were there in the city of Rome during the imperial era?
2. Was the capital the only place that housed dazzling collections of literature?
3. Who completed a memorial library to his father in the city of Ephesus (modern day Turkey) sometime around 120 A.D.?
4. What do four statues represent?
5. What was the most striking feature of the library?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Imperial Library of Constantinople



The Theodosian city walls originally built in the 5th century during reign of Theodosius II. (Credit: Ken Welsh/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Long after the Western Roman Empire had gone into decline, classical Greek and Roman thought continued to flourish in Constantinople, the capital of the Byzantine Empire. The city's Imperial Library first came into existence in the fourth century A.D. under Constantine the Great, but it remained relatively small until the fifth century, when its collection grew to a staggering 120,000 scrolls and codices. The size of the Imperial Library continued to wax and wane for the next several centuries due to neglect and frequent fires, and it later suffered a devastating blow after a Crusader army sacked Constantinople in 1204. Nevertheless, its scribes and scholars are now credited with preserving countless pieces of ancient Greek and Roman literature by making parchment copies of deteriorating papyrus scrolls.

- 1) a number of countries ruled by one person or government;
- 2) a change to a lower amount; the process of becoming less in quality or strength;
- 3) to grow or develop successfully;
- 4) the state of being real, or of being known or recognized;
- 5) to put a thin layer of wax on the surface of something, either to make it waterproof or to improve its appearance;
- 6) to become weaker;
- 7) to fail to give needed care or attention to someone or something;
- 8) causing a lot of damage or destruction;
- 9) a Christian who fought in one of the religious wars of the 11th, 12th, 13th, and 17th centuries, mostly against Muslims in Palestine;
- 10) becoming worse.

II. Make sentences with these words.

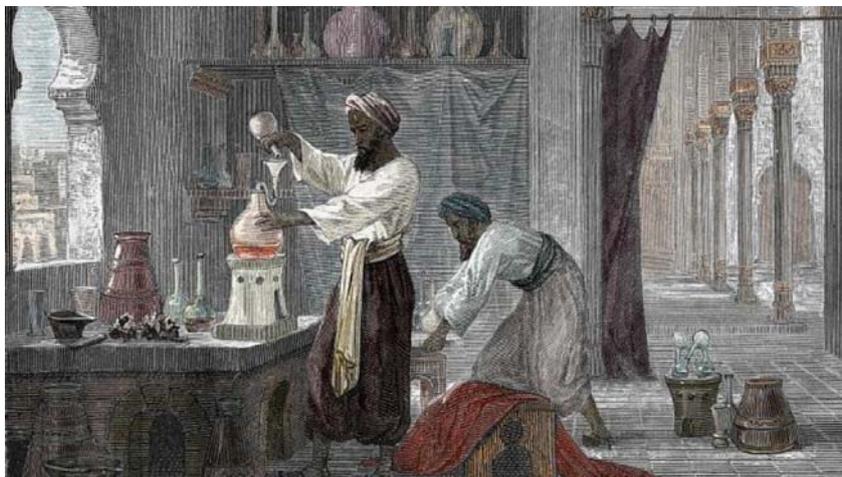
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Did classical Greek and Roman thought continue to flourish in Constantinople, the capital of the Byzantine Empire long after the Western Roman Empire had gone into decline?
2. When did the city's Imperial Library first come into existence?
3. How long did it remain relatively small?
4. How did the size of the Imperial Library change and what devastating blow did it suffer?
5. What are its scribes and scholars now credited with?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. The House of Wisdom



Portrait of Razi polymath, physician and alchemist in his laboratory in Bagdad, Iraq. (Credit: Leemage/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Iraqi city of Baghdad was once one of the world's centers of learning and culture, and perhaps no institution was more integral to its development than the House of Wisdom. First established in the early ninth century A.D. during the reign of the Abbasids, the site was centered around an enormous library stocked with Persian, Indian and Greek manuscripts on mathematics, astronomy, science, medicine and philosophy. The books served as a natural draw for the Middle East's top scholars, who flocked to the House of Wisdom to study its texts and translate them into Arabic. Their ranks included the mathematician al-Khawarizmi, one of the fathers of algebra, as well as the polymath thinker al-Kindi, often called "the Philosopher of the Arabs." The House of Wisdom stood as the Islamic world's intellectual nerve center for several hundred years, but it later met a grisly end in 1258, when the Mongols sacked Baghdad. According to legend, so many books were tossed into the River Tigris that its waters turned black from ink.

- 1) a medical doctor, especially one who has general skill and is not a surgeon;
- 2) the period of time when a king or queen rules a country;
- 3) an old document or book written by hand in the times before printing was invented;
- 4) a person with great knowledge, usually of a particular subject;
- 5) a part of mathematics in which signs and letters represent numbers;
- 6) someone who studies or writes about the meaning of life;
- 7) the ability to make good judgments based on what you have learned from your experience, or the knowledge and understanding that gives you this ability;
- 8) to attack a building or town, causing a lot of destruction and stealing many valuable things;
- 9) to throw something carelessly;
- 10) coloured liquid used for writing, printing, and drawing.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Was the Iraqi city of Baghdad one of the world's centers of learning and culture?
2. What literature was the enormous library stocked with?
3. Who did the books serve as a natural draw for?
4. What language did the scholars translate the texts into?
5. When did the House of Wisdom that stood as the Islamic world's intellectual nerve center for several hundred years, meet a grisly end?

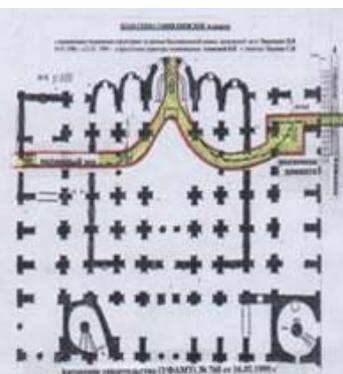
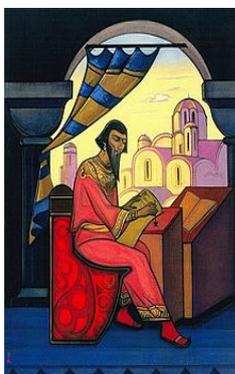
IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Бібліотека Ярослава Мудрого

<https://uk.wikipedia.org/wiki>



Софійський собор в Києві (1037 рік).

Бібліотека Ярослава Мудрого — за літописними свідченнями, перша бібліотека Київської Русі, що розташовувалася на території Софійського

Собору в Києві. Час заснування бібліотеки невідомий. У «Повісті временних літ» про неї згадується у 1037 році. Віддаючи належне Ярославу Мудрому, літописець після розповіді про користь книг, які «суть реки напоющие вселенную», говорить, що «Ярославъ же сей, якоже рекохом, любил бе книги, много написав и положи в святей Софии церкви». Це єдина згадка в літописних джерелах про першу бібліотеку Київської Русі. Подальша її доля невідома. Мало відомостей і про первинне місце розташування книгозбірні й книгописної майстерні при ній, а також про кількісний і якісний склад її фонду.

Щодо книжок бібліотеки, літопис наголошує на винятково церковному їх спрямуванні. Очевидно, більшість із них справді були церковними, адже потреба в них диктувалася поширенням на Русі християнства. Однак поряд з церковними перекладалися, очевидно, й книжки, що містили відомості зі світової історії, географії, астрономії, філософські та юридичні трактати, публіцистичні твори. Саме вони послужили основою для перетворення Софії Київської на центр літописання і передової думки. У Софії Київській було укладено перший літописний звід 1037-39 років, написано і проголошено знамените «Слово про Закон і Благодать» київського митрополита Іларіона, створено «Ізборник Святослава», написано «Послання до Смоленського пресвітера Фоми» київського митрополита Климента Смолятича. Знайомство з творами Іларіона і Климента Смолятича переконує в тому, що їм були відомі основні положення філософських вчень Платона, Арістотеля та інших філософів давніх часів.

Є підстави стверджувати, що бібліотека Софії Київської і книгописна майстерня, заклали основу бібліотеки Києво-Печерського монастиря, а також бібліотек інших великих міст Київської Русі. За підрахунками фахівців, книгозбірня Софійського собору налічувала понад 950 томів. З приводу подальшої долі бібліотеки думки дослідників розділилися. Одні вважають, що частина її книг напередодні монголо-татарської навали розійшлася по бібліотеках різних соборів і монастирів, а решта загинула 1240 року під час спалення Києва. Інші сподіваються, що книги вдалося сховати десь у київських, а то навіть і прикиївських підземеллях. На думку російського дослідника-книгознавця М. Розова, сліди бібліотеки Ярослава треба шукати в «Ізборнику Святослава», а також у 20 інших давньоруських рукописах, які зберігаються в Санкт-Петербурзі в Російській національній бібліотеці ім. Салтикова-Щедріна. Можливо, якісь книжки із Софії були переміщені до Києво-Печерського монастиря. Павло Алеппський 1653 року писав, що в Києво-Печерському монастирі є прекрасне книгозховище з безліччю дорогих книг, у тому числі й пергаментних, яким не менше 500 років.

Проте бібліотека Києво-Печерського монастиря згоріла 1718 року, і визначити, які книжки із Софійського собору були в ній, вже неможливо.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a,b,c, or d.

1. The world's oldest known library was founded sometime in for the "royal contemplation" of the Assyrian ruler Ashurbanipal.
 - a) the 7th century B.C.
 - b) the 10 th century B.C.
 - c) the 7th century A.D.
 - d) the 10th century A.D.
2. Archaeologists later stumbled upon the ruins of the Library of Ashurbanipal in the mid-19th century, and the majority of its contents are now kept in
 - a) the National Art Center in Tokyo
 - b) Bangkok National Museum
 - c) the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities in Cairo
 - d) the British Museum in London
3. Following Alexander the Great's death in 323 B.C.,fell to his former general Ptolemy I Soter, who sought to establish a center of learning in the city of Alexandria.
 - a) control of Mesopotamia
 - b) control of Egypt
 - c) control of China
 - d) control of Greece
4. Some scholars argue that the Library of Alexandria finally met its end in 270 A.D. during the reign of , while others believe that it came even later during the fourth century.
 - a) the Roman emperor Augustus
 - b)) the Roman emperor Caligula
 - c)) the Roman emperor Claudius
 - d)) the Roman emperor Aurelian
5. Constructed in the third century B.C. by members of the Attalid dynasty, the Library of Pergamum, , was once home to a treasure-trove of some 200,000 scrolls.
 - a) located in what is now Cyprus
 - b) located in what is now Turkey
 - c) located in what is now Iran
 - d) located in what is now Greece
6. The Library of Pergamum was housed in a temple complex devoted to , the Greek goddess of wisdom, and is believed to have comprised four rooms—three for the library's contents and another that served as a meeting space for banquets and academic conferences.

- a) Athena
- b) Aphrodite
- c) Hera
- d) Hestia

7. The Villa of the Papyri's roughly 1,800 scrolls were located in the Roman city of Herculaneum in a villa that was most likely built by Julius Caesar's , Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus.

- a) brother-in-law
- b) uncle-in-law
- c) son-in-law
- d) father-in-law

8. Much of the catalogue has yet to be deciphered, but studies have already revealed that the library contains several texts by an Epicurean

- a) philosopher and poet named Boethius
- b) philosopher and poet named Lucretius
- c) philosopher and poet named Philodemus
- d) philosopher and poet named Plotinus

9. Sometime around 112 A.D., completed construction on a sprawling, multi-use building complex in the heart of the city of Rome.

- a) the Roman emperor Trajan
- b) the Roman emperor Caligula
- c)) the Roman emperor Claudius
- d)) the Roman emperor Aurelian

10. Historians are unsure of when ceased to exist, but it was still being mentioned in writing as late as the fifth century A.D., which suggests that it stood for at least 300 years.

- a) Trajan's dual library
- b) Caligula's dual library
- c) Claudius' dual library
- d) Aurelian's dual library

11. Sometime around 120 A.D., the son of the Roman consul Tiberius Julius Celsus Polemaeanus completed a memorial library to his father in the city of Ephesus (.....).

- a) modern day Iran
- b) modern day Cyprus
- c) modern day Greece
- d) modern day Turkey

12. The library may have held some 12,000 scrolls, but its most striking feature was no doubt himself, who was buried inside in an ornamental sarcophagus.

- a) M. Valerius Maximus Corvus V
- b) C. Claudius Canina I
- c) Tiberius Julius Celsus Polemaeanus
- d) C. Fabricius Luscinus II

13. The city's Imperial Library first came into existence in the fourth century A.D. under , but it remained relatively small until the fifth century, when its collection grew to a staggering 120,000 scrolls and codices.

- a) Theodosius I "the Great"
- b) Constantine the Great
- c) Julian the Apostate
- d) Leo I "the Thracian"

14. The size of the Imperial Library continued to wax and wane for the next several centuries due to neglect and frequent fires, and it later suffered a devastating blow after a Crusader army sacked Constantinople in

- a) 1204
- b) 1304
- c) 1404
- d) 1504

15. The Iraqi city of Baghdad was once one of the world's centers of learning and culture, and perhaps no institution was more integral to its development that

- a) the House of Knowledge
- b) the House of Intelligence
- c) the House of Justice
- d) the House of Wisdom

16. The House of Wisdom stood as for several hundred years, but it later met a grisly end in 1258, when the Mongols sacked Baghdad.

- a) the Islamic world's intellectual nerve center
- b) the Christianity's world's intellectual nerve center
- c) the Hinduism's world's intellectual nerve center
- d) the Judaism's world's intellectual nerve center

UNIT XIII

8 Remarkable Early Maps

<https://www.history.com/news/8-remarkable-early-maps>

1. The Babylonian World Map



Babylonian map of the world. (Credit: VCG Wilson/Corbis/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

History's earliest known world map was scratched on clay tablets in the ancient city of Babylon sometime around 600 B.C. The star-shaped map measures just five-by-three inches and shows the world as a flat disc surrounded by an ocean, or "bitter river." Babylon and the Euphrates River are depicted in the center as a pair of rectangles, while the neighboring cities of Assyria and Susa are shown as small, circular blobs. Outside of the disc sit a collection of triangular wedges, which depict far-off islands with mysterious labels such as "beyond the flight of birds" and "a place where the sun cannot be seen." The accompanying cuneiform text describes these unknown lands as being populated by mythological beasts, which suggests that the map shows both real geographical features and elements of Babylonian cosmology.

- 1) to cut or damage a surface or your skin slightly with or on something sharp or rough;
- 2) thick, heavy soil that is soft when wet, and hard when dry or baked, used for making bricks and containers;
- 3) a unit used for measuring length, approximately equal to 2.54 centimetres, sometimes shown by the symbol " ";
- 4) a flat shape with four 90° angles and four sides, with opposite sides of equal length;
- 5) shaped like a circle;
- 6) a fat, round drop, usually of something sticky or thick;
- 7) shaped like a triangle;
- 8) a form of writing used for over 3,000 years until the 1st century BC in the ancient countries of Western Asia;
- 9) an animal, especially a large or wild one;
- 10) the study of the nature and origin of the universe.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Where and when was the history's earliest known world map scratched on clay tablets?
2. How does the star-shaped map show the world?
3. How are Babylon, the Euphrates River, Assyria and Susa shown?
4. What does the accompanying cuneiform text describe?
5. Does the map show real geographical features or the elements of Babylonian cosmology?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Ptolemy's Geography



Medieval reconstruction of one of Ptolemy's maps. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Many elements of the science of cartography can trace their origins to the work of the Greek scholar Claudius Ptolemaeus, better known as Ptolemy. Around 150 A.D., he produced "Geography," an eight-volume textbook that included some of the first maps to use mathematical principles. Ptolemy's book has a few notable errors—the Indian Ocean, for example, is depicted as a sea—yet it's still remarkable for its breadth and detail. It boasts more than 8,000 different place names as well as references to such far-flung locales as Iceland and Korea, all of which are plotted according to geometric points of latitude and longitude. Sadly, no maps drawn by Ptolemy have survived to today. His atlas seems to have disappeared for over a thousand years, and it wasn't until the 13th century that Byzantine scholars began making projections using his coordinates.

- 1) the science or art of making or drawing maps;
- 2) to find the origin of something;
- 3) a book that contains detailed information about a subject for people who are studying that subject;
- 4) a mistake, esp. in a way that can be discovered as wrong, or the making of such mistakes;
- 5) to represent or show something in a picture or story;

- 6) to have or own something to be proud of;
- 7) a mention of something;
- 8) an area or place, esp. one where something special happens;
- 9) the position north or south of the equator measured from 0° to 90°;
- 10) the distance of a place east or west of an imaginary line between the North Pole and the South Pole, measured in degrees.

II. Make sentences with these words.

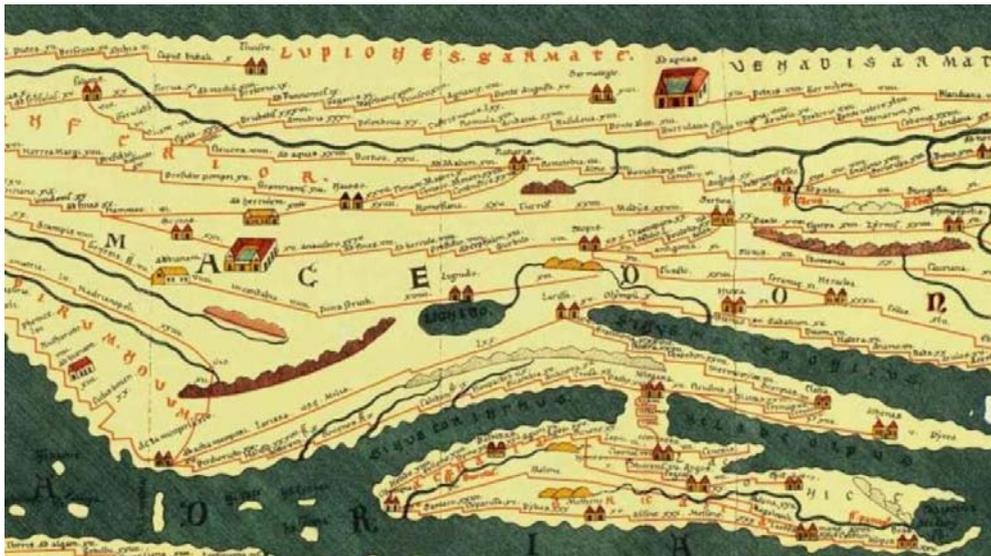
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What do you know about the Greek scholar Claudius Ptolemaeus?
2. What did “Geography,” an eight-volume textbook include?
3. Does Ptolemy’s book have any notable errors?
4. Have the maps drawn by Ptolemy survived to today?
5. When did his atlas disappear?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. The Peutinger Map



The Peutinger Map. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

During the days when all roads led to Rome, the so-called Peutinger Map would have served as a handy guide to the Empire’s transportation network. The oddly shaped map is 22 feet long and just one foot wide, and depicts the course of more 60,000 miles of Roman roads stretching from Western Europe to the Middle East. An additional section also shows India, Sri Lanka and other parts of Asia. Much like a modern travel guide, the map includes the locations of more than 500 cities along with some 3,500 other points of interest such as way stations, temples, forests, rivers and even spas. The original Peutinger map was

probably completed sometime around the 4th century A.D., but the version that exists today is a 13th century copy. It is named for the German scholar Konrad Peutinger, who took ownership of it in the early 1500s.

1) a book that gives you the most important information about a particular subject;

2) the movement of people or goods from one place to another;

3) a large system consisting of many similar parts that are connected together to allow movement or communication between or along the parts, or between the parts and a control centre;

4) a unit of measurement, equal to twelve inches or 0.3048 metres, sometimes shown by the symbol ';

5) to represent or show something in a picture or story;

6) a place or position;

7) a building used for the worship of a god or gods in some religions;

8) a town where water comes out of the ground and people come to drink it or lie in it because they think it will improve their health;

9) a particular form of something that is slightly different from other forms of the same thing;

10) the fact that you own something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What map would have served as a handy guide to the Empire's transportation network during the days when all roads led to Rome?

2. What does the oddly shaped map depict?

3. What does an additional section show?

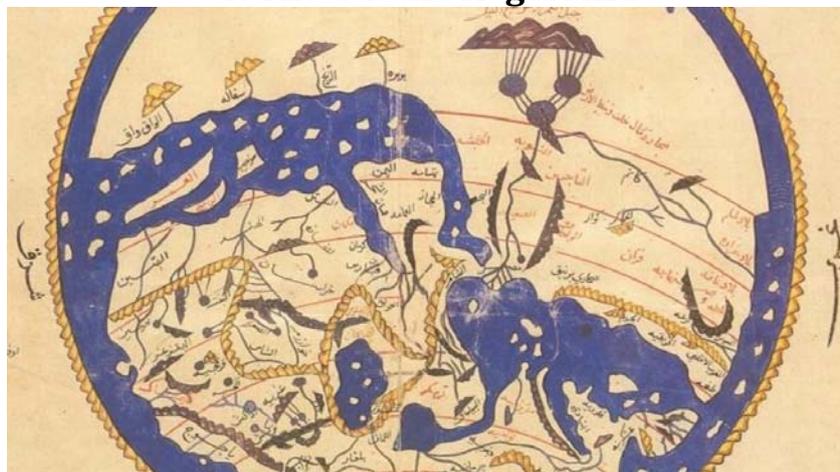
4. When was the original Peutinger map completed?

5. Who is the map named for?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. The Tabula Rogeriana



The Tabula Rogeriana. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the 12th century A.D., the renowned Muslim scholar al-Idrisi was invited to the court of the Norman King Roger II and asked to produce a book on geography. The result was the “Tabula Rogeriana,” also known by its longer title, “A Guide to Pleasant Journeys into Faraway Lands.” The book featured several regional maps as well as a projection of the known world, which depicted the entirety of Eurasia and a large section of Africa. By drawing from interviews with travelers and his own wanderings through Europe, al-Idrisi also compiled extensive data on the climate, politics and culture of different regions. The Tabula Rogeriana remained among the world’s most accurate maps for several centuries, but it may appear strange at first glance—in the tradition of Islamic cartographers, al-Idrisi drew it with south positioned at the top.

- 1) an ancient tablet for writing on;
- 2) having a widespread, esp good, reputation; famous;
- 3) relating to Islam or Muslims;
- 4) the place where a king or a queen lives and carries out ceremonial or administrative duties;
- 5) the name of a film, book, painting, piece of music, etc.;
- 6) a long distance away;
- 7) with all parts included;
- 8) a conversation with or questioning of a person;
- 9) journeys that they make from place to place without staying in one place for a long time;
- 10) a quick short look.

II. Make sentences with these words.

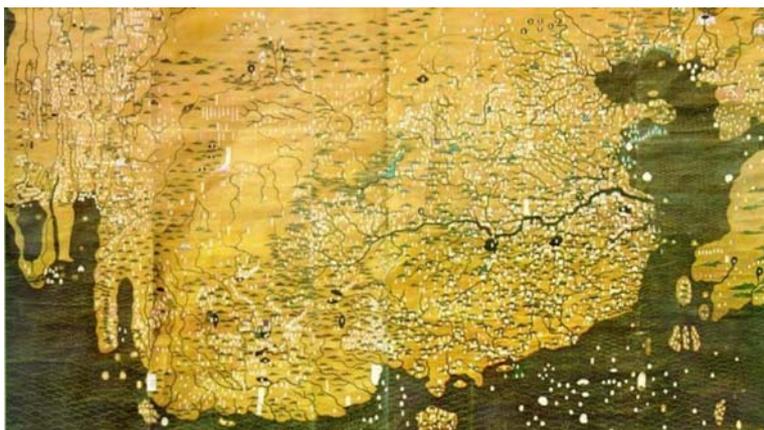
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Why was the renowned Muslim scholar al-Idrisi invited to the court of the Norman King Roger II in the 12th century A.D.?
2. Did the book feature any regional maps?
3. What did the projection of the known world depict?
4. Did the Tabula Rogeriana remain among the world’s most accurate maps for several centuries?
5. How did al-Idrisi draw the map?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. The Da Ming Hun Yi Tu



The Da Ming Hun Yi Tu. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

One of the earliest surviving world maps from the Far East, China's Da Ming Hun Yi Tu, or "Amalgamated Map of the Ming Empire," was drawn on silk as early as 1389. The map spans the entire Eurasian continent from Japan to the Atlantic Ocean, and includes detailed markings of mountain ranges, rivers and administrative centers. It is particularly notable for the way in which it distorts the size of various landmasses. Mainland China sits like a monolith in the middle of the map, while Japan and Korea are both far larger than India. The African continent, meanwhile, is depicted as a relatively small peninsula with what appears to be a giant lake in its center. Despite these peculiarities, the Da Ming Hun Yi Tu is often cited as the first map to show Africa with a southern tip that could be circumnavigated.

- 1) combined, joined together into one;
- 2) a delicate, soft type of cloth made from a thread produced by silkworms;
- 3) to include all of a particular space or area;
- 4) things painted or written on something;
- 5) a group of hills or mountains;
- 6) to change the shape of something so that it looks strange or unnatural;
- 7) a large area of land such as a continent that is in one piece and not broken up by oceans;
- 8) something like a monolith in size, unity of structure or purpose, unyielding quality;
- 9) extremely large;
- 10) to sail all the way around something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was the title of one of the earliest surviving world maps from the Far East?
2. What was it drawn on?

3. How does the map span the entire Eurasian continent?
4. Does it include detailed markings of mountain ranges, rivers and administrative centers?
5. How is the African continent depicted?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The Cantino Planisphere



The Cantino Planisphere. (Credit: The Cantino Planisphere/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Cantino Planisphere was once at the center of an act of cartographic theft. In 1502, an Italian duke commissioned an agent named Alberto Cantino to acquire a map of the geographic discoveries of the Kingdom of Portugal, which was notorious for closely guarding the location of the new lands found by its explorers. Cantino succeeded in his mission, and the map that he smuggled out of Portugal has since become famous. Not only does it depict Africa, India and Europe in unprecedented detail, it stands as one of the earliest known maps to show the coastlines of Portugal's "New World" territories in South America. To the north of Brazil, the map also includes a small grouping of landmasses that appear to be Cuba, Hispaniola and part of the American East Coast.

- 1) a projection or representation of all or part of a sphere on a plane surface, such as a polar projection of the celestial sphere onto a chart;
- 2) the crime of stealing;
- 3) a man with a very high social rank;
- 4) to formally choose someone to do a special piece of work, or to formally ask for a special piece of work from someone;
- 5) famous for something bad;
- 6) to achieve something that you have been aiming for;

7) the action of sending someone to a place to do a particular job, esp. one for a government or religious organization, or the job the person has been sent to do;

8) to take things or people to or from a place secretly and often illegally;

9) never having happened or existed in the past;

10) the particular shape of the coast, especially as seen from above, from the sea, or on a map.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What map was once at the center of an act of cartographic theft?

2. Who commissioned an agent named Alberto Cantino to acquire a map of the geographic discoveries of the Kingdom of Portugal?

3. Did Cantino succeed in his mission?

4. Why did the map become famous?

5. What landmasses to the north of Brazil does the map include?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Waldseemüller World Map



The Waldseemüller World Map, 1507. (Credit: Heritage Images / Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Martin Waldseemüller is far from a household name, but perhaps he should be—he helped give the American continents their name. In 1507, the German cartographer produced the first map in history to depict the New World as a distinct landmass with the Pacific Ocean on its western side. In honor of the Italian navigator Amerigo Vespucci, who had first posited the separate continent theory, Waldseemüller and collaborator Matthias Ringmann dubbed these new Western Hemisphere territories “America.” The Waldseemüller map has since been called “America’s birth certificate,” but it also bears the distinction of being

the most expensive world map of all time. In 2003, the Library of Congress purchased the only surviving copy for a whopping \$10 million.

- 1) a group of people, often a family, who live together in a house or flat;
- 2) to make something or bring something into existence;
- 3) clearly separate and different;
- 4) great respect for someone;
- 5) an explorer who travelled by sea;
- 6) to assume or put forward as fact or the factual basis for an argument;
- 7) a person who works together with others for a special purpose;
- 8) an official document that states that the information on it is true;
- 9) to buy something;
- 10) extremely large.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What is Martin Waldseemüller famous for?
2. What did the German cartographer produce in 1507?
3. Was Amerigo Vespucci the Italian navigator, the first who had posited the separate continent theory?
4. How did Waldseemüller and collaborator Matthias Ringmann dub these new Western Hemisphere territories?
5. How much did the Library of Congress pay for the only surviving copy of the map?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. The Mercator Projection



*Mercator's 1569 map—the first to employ his projection style.
(Credit: Public Domain)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Once a staple of school classrooms the world over, the famed Mercator projection has also been the subject of considerable debate and controversy. The Flemish cartographer Gerardus Mercator first designed the map style in 1569 as a way of displaying the spherical Earth on a flat, rectangular surface. With this in mind, he drew a world map with parallels of latitude that are spaced increasingly far apart as they move away from the equator. This feature made the Mercator projection invaluable to mariners, who could use it to sail in straight lines with a constant compass bearing, but it also meant that the relative size of different landmasses was hugely distorted. Greenland and other polar regions appear far larger than they actually are, while equatorial landmasses such as Africa and South America are heavily compressed. The Mercator projection nevertheless remained a fixture of atlases until the 20th century, when critics began to denounce it as inaccurate. While it's still used as a navigational aid, it has since been largely supplanted by more modern, oval-shaped maps such as the Robinson and Winkel Tripel projections.

- 1) the main or important part of something;
- 2) a serious discussion of a subject in which many people take part;
- 3) a lot of disagreement or argument about something, usually because it affects or is important to many people;
- 4) to show words, pictures, etc. on a screen;
- 5) level and smooth, with no curved, high, or hollow parts;
- 6) one of a number of imaginary lines around the earth always at the same distance from the equator;
- 7) an imaginary line drawn around the middle of the earth an equal distance from the North Pole and the South Pole;
- 8) a person who works on a ship; a sailor;
- 9) a device for finding direction with a needle that can move easily and that always points to magnetic north;
- 10) a book containing maps.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the Flemish cartographer Gerardus Mercator first design the map style as a way of displaying the spherical Earth on a flat, rectangular surface?
2. How did Gerardus Mercator draw a world map?
3. Why was the Mercator projection invaluable to mariners?
4. Did the Mercator projection remain a fixture of atlases until the 20th century?
5. What maps has the Mercator projection been largely supplanted by?

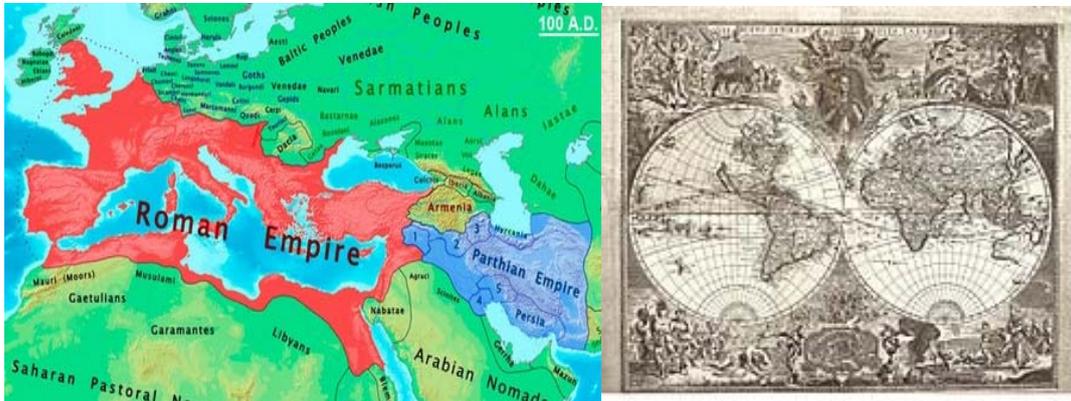
IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Досягнення картографії в Римській імперії

<http://www.geograf.com.ua>



Умови для розвитку картографії в Римській імперії були досить сприятливими. Військові походи римлян охопили велетенські простори навколо Середземного моря в Європі, Азії, Африці. Римляни, використовуючи досягнення грецької картографії, зуміли застосувати її для завойовницьких цілей і будівництва доріг. Для контролю над підкореними країнами були потрібні великий адміністративний апарат і облаштування доріг для зв'язку з віддаленими провінціями, для військових, політичних і торгових цілей. Тому цілком природно очікувати наявність в Римі спеціальних дорожніх карт. Про них свідчать літературні джерела та артефакти тих часів.

Державна потреба в картах змусила сенат винести рішення про проведення вимірювальних робіт в імперії. Перші виміри доріг були розпочаті при Юлії Цезарі і завершилися в роки правління Августа. Отримані результати дали змогу Марку Віпсанію Агріппі (бл. 63 – 12 рр. до н. е.) підготувати матеріали для створення карти відомого римлянам світу, яку завершили після смерті Агріппи (не збереглася). Римський історик Пліній розповідав про цю карту і хвалив її за точність. Агріппа хотів побудувати спеціальну галерею, щоб на її стінах зобразити для загального користування свою карту. За даними Плінія, до Риму надсилали карти військових походів із Вірменії; Нільська експедиція, послана імператором Нероном, привезла з собою карту Ефіопії. Письменник Варрон згадує, що його друзі розглядали зображення Італії на стіні одного храму; в іншому храмі на стіні була карта о. Сардинії. Це свідчить не тільки про суспільну роль карти в Римській імперії, а й про широке проведення там земельних зйомок.

Наукові праці з географії і картографії досягли свого розквіту в часи Римської імперії в роботах Клавдія Птолемея (90 – 168 рр. н. е.), грецького математика, астронома, географа і картографа, який жив і працював в

Александрії. Його фундаментальний „Посібник з географії” у вісьмох книгах з додатком із двадцяти семи карт користувався непохитним авторитетом протягом майже чотирнадцяти століть. Слово «птолемей» в кінці Середньовіччя стало загальним і означало зібрання карт. Із праці видно, що Птолемей розумів головну задачу географії в картографічному відображенні землі, яке дає «можливість споглядати всю Землю в одній картині». В роботі Птолемей використовував карту свого попередника Маріна з міста Тір (Фінікія) та її опис. Птоломей відзначає, що Марін «старанно розібрав твори всіх своїх попередників» і що «він багато разів виправляв свою карту». Для полегшення складання карт за географічними координатами Птолемей у своїй праці при описі країн приділив багато уваги таблицям широт і довгот, в яких дано близько 8000 об’єктів: систематично перерахованих населених пунктів, річок, гір тощо. Координати розраховувалися на основі даних про відстань між пунктами, отриманих від мандрівників і торговців. Птолемею був відомий метод визначення довгот за різницею часу під час спостереження сонячних і місячних затемнень у різних пунктах.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. History’s earliest known world map was scratched on clay tablets in the ancient city of sometime around 600 B.C.
 - a) Tripoli
 - b) Athens
 - c) Babylon
 - d) Naples
2. Outside of the disc sit a collection of triangular wedges, which depict far-off islands with mysterious labels such as “beyond the flight of birds” and
 - a) “a place where the moon cannot be seen.”
 - b) “a place where the horizon cannot be seen.”
 - c) “a place where the sky cannot be seen.”
 - d) “a place where the sun cannot be seen.”
3. Many elements of the science of cartography can trace their origins to the work of the Greek scholar Claudius Ptolemaeus, better known as
 - a) Ptolemy
 - b) Plato
 - c) Socrates
 - d) Parmenides
4. Ptolemy’s book “Geography” has a few notable errors— , for example, is depicted as a sea—yet it’s still remarkable for its breadth and detail.
 - a) the Pacific Ocean

- b) the Indian Ocean
- c) the Atlantic Ocean
- d) the Arctic Ocean

5. The oddly shaped Peutinger Map map is 22 feet long and just one foot wide, and depicts the course of more 60,000 miles of Roman roads stretching from Western Europe to

- a) the Middle East.
- b) the Far East.
- c) the Middle West.
- d)) the Far East.

6. The original Peutinger map was probably completed sometime around, but the version that exists today is a 13th century copy.

- a) the 2nd century B.C.
- b) the 2nd century A.D.
- c) the 4th century B.C.
- d) the 4th century A.D.

7. In the 12th century A.D., the renowned Muslim scholar al-Idrisi was invited to the court of the Norman King Roger II and asked to produce

- a) a book on geography
- b) a book on astronomy
- c) a book on mathematics
- d) a book on history

8. The Tabula Rogeriana remained among the world's most accurate maps for several centuries, but it may appear strange at first glance—in the tradition of Islamic cartographers, al-Idrisi drew it withpositioned at the top.

- a) north
- b) south
- c) east
- d) west

9. One of the earliest surviving world maps from the Far East, China's Da Ming Hun Yi Tu, or "Amalgamated Map of the Ming Empire," was drawn on as early as 1389.

- a) silk
- b) cotton
- c) leather
- d) papyrus

10. the Da Ming Hun Yi Tu is often cited as the first map to show with a southern tip that could be circumnavigated.

- a) America
- b) Australia
- c) Asia
- d) Africa

11. The Cantino Planisphere not only depicts Africa, India and Europe in unprecedented detail, it stands as one of the earliest known maps to show the coastlines of Portugal's "New World" territories in

- a) North America
- b) South America
- c) East America
- d) West America

12. To the north of Brazil, the map also includes a small grouping of landmasses that appear to be Cuba, Hispaniola and part of the

- a) American North Coast
- b) American South Coast
- c) American East Coast
- d) American West Coast

13. In 1507, the Martin Waldseemüller produced the first map in history to depict the New World as a distinct landmass with the Pacific Ocean on its western side.

- a) Austrian cartographer
- b) Danish cartographer
- c) Dutch cartographer
- d) German cartographer

14. The Waldseemüller map has since been called "America's birth certificate," but it also bears the distinction of being the most expensive world map of all time. In 2003, the Library of Congress purchased the only surviving copy for a whopping

- a) \$1 million
- b) \$5 million
- c) \$10 million
- d) \$15 million

15. The first designed the map style in 1569 as a way of displaying the spherical Earth on a flat, rectangular surface.

- a) Danish cartographer Gerardus Mercator
- b) Dutch cartographer Gerardus Mercator
- c) Flemish cartographer Gerardus Mercator
- d) German cartographer Gerardus Mercator

16. The Mercator projection nevertheless remained a fixture of atlases, when critics began to denounce it as inaccurate.

- a) until the 17th century
- b) until the 18th century
- c) until the 19th century
- d) until the 20th century

UNIT XIV

8 Notable Lotteries from History

<https://www.history.com/news/8-notable-lotteries-from-history>

1. Athenian Democratic Lotteries



*Kleroterion device used by Athenian Senate to draw lots for public officials.
(Credit: Marsyas)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The ancient Greek city-state of Athens is considered the birthplace of democracy, but its method of choosing leaders bore little resemblance to its modern successors. Rather than relying entirely on elections, the Athenians of the 6th century B.C. selected most of their government officials through a system of random allotment, or “sortition.” Eligible candidates—usually free men over the age of 18—would have their names placed in a lottery. The winners would then be drawn and assigned terms as jurors or members of the citizen council. The Athenians considered the lottery more democratic than elections, which they believed could be easily corrupted by money or political influence. They even devised a special device known as “kleroterion” to ensure a random drawing. This consisted of a stone slab covered in small slots, which held identifying tokens for individual citizens. A collection of black and white pebbles would be funneled into a tube on the side of the slab, and depending on where they landed, candidates would either be selected or dismissed.

- 1) happening, done, or chosen by chance rather than according to a plan;
- 2) part of an amount of something that is given to someone
- 3) a game designed to raise money by selling lottery tickets that people buy hoping that their numbers are chosen by chance in the draw so that they win a money prize;
- 4) someone who is a member of a jury;
- 5) the group of people elected to govern a particular area, town, or city, and organize services for it;
- 6) to become or cause to become dishonest or disloyal;
- 7) a symbol or visible representation of something;

8) a small smooth round stone, especially one found on a beach or in a river;

9) to go by passing through a narrow opening;

10) a thick, flat piece of a solid substance, such as stone, wood, metal, food, etc., that is usually square or rectangular.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What city is considered the birthplace of democracy?

2. How did the Athenians of the 6th century B.C. select most of their government officials?

3. How old were eligible candidates?

4. Why did the Athenians consider the lottery more democratic than elections?

5. What device was known as “kleroterion” ?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Keno



*The popular gambling game dubbed “Keno” which was launched in France.
(Credit: JEAN-LOUP GAUTREAU/AFP/Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The game of Keno is a fixture in modern day casinos, but its origins go back more than 2,000 years to Han Dynasty-era China. Ancient Keno was known as “baige piao,” or “white pigeon ticket,” and usually took the form of a lottery-style game in which players chose a series of numbers or characters and then received a prize if their picks came up in a random drawing. Baige piao was popular across China, so much so that provincial governments often sanctioned games as a way of raising funds for the military or public works projects. It may have even been used to help finance parts of the Great Wall of China.

1) a well-established, regularly occurring sports or social event;

2) a building where games, especially roulette and card games are played for money;

3) a large, usually grey bird that is often seen in towns sitting on buildings in large groups, and is sometimes eaten as food;

4) something valuable, such as an amount of money, that is given to someone who succeeds in a competition or game;

5) choice;

6) relating to an area that is governed as part of a country or an empire;

7) the offices, departments, and groups of people that control a country, state, city, or other political unit;

8) to formally give permission for something;

9) money, often money for a specific purpose;

10) to provide the money needed for something;

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Which dynasty do the origins of the game of Keno go back to?

2. How did they call the ancient game of Keno?

3. What form did the ancient game of Keno usually take?

4. Where was Baige piao popular?

5. Was the game used to help finance parts of the Great Wall of China?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Roman Decimation



Battle Scene with a Roman Army Besieging a Large City. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Not every historical lottery was one the participants wanted to win. In ancient Rome, disgraced legionaries and soldiers were sometimes punished with a brutal form of military justice known as “decimation.” If the members of a unit were found guilty of cowardice or disobeying orders, their leaders would hold a lottery and randomly select one man out of every ten. These unlucky few would

then be put to death, usually by being bludgeoned by their brothers in arms. According to the ancient chronicler Polybius, the grisly lotteries were intended to set an example for the rest of the troops. "The danger and dread of drawing the fatal lot affects all equally, as it is uncertain on whom it will fall," he writes in his Histories. "The best possible means are thus taken to inspire fear for the future, and to correct the mischief which has occurred."

1) selecting by lot and killing every tenth one of;
2) a soldier belonging to a legion;
3) cruel, violent, and completely without feelings;
4) the behaviour of someone who is not at all brave and tries to avoid danger;

- 5) to refuse to do something that you are told to do;
6) to hit someone hard and repeatedly with a heavy weapon;
7) extremely unpleasant, especially because death or blood is involved;
8) the possibility of harm or death to someone;
9) a strong feeling of fear or worry;
10) injury or harm caused by a person or thing.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was punished with a brutal form of military justice known as "decimation" in ancient Rome?
2. What happened if the members of a unit were found guilty of cowardice or disobeying orders?
3. Who were these unlucky few put to death by?
4. Who were the grisly lotteries intended to set an example for?
5. What did the ancient chronicler Polybius write in his Histories?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. 16th Century Italian Lotteries



*Public lottery drawing in Venice, Italy by Gabriel Bella.
(Credit: DEA / A. DAGLI ORTI)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Many facets of modern lotteries date to Renaissance-era Italy, where lot-based gambling games were used both as private moneymaking schemes and methods of funding public works projects. Beginning in the 1500s, lotteries became sprang up in a number of Italian cities including Florence, Rome and Venice. Prizes were often cash, but they also included gifts such as carpets, jewels, servants, real estate and even government contracts to collect tolls and taxes. In Genoa, meanwhile, the lotto evolved from the city's system of randomly choosing five public officials from a potential pool of 90 candidates. People began betting on who would be selected, and the game proved so popular that it was eventually taken over by the state. The Italian lotteries were considered a useful method of fundraising—one was used to help build the famous Rialto Bridge in Venice—but they were also a source of controversy. More than one Pope considered the games sinful and threatened participants with excommunication, and the church later made several attempts to ban the lottery in Rome.

- 1) an aspect or phase, as of a subject or personality;
- 2) the activity of risking money on the result of something, such as a game or horse race, hoping to make money;
- 3) money in the form of notes and coins, rather than cheques or credit cards;
- 4) property in the form of land or buildings;
- 5) a small amount of money that you have to pay to use a road, cross a bridge, etc.
- 6) a group of people who are available to work or to do an activity when they are needed;
- 7) a disagreement, often a public one, that involves different ideas or opinions about something;
- 8) against the rules of a religion or morally wrong;
- 9) the act of refusing to allow someone to be involved in the Church, especially the Roman Catholic Church, and to take part in the ceremony of Communion;
- 10) to forbid (= refuse to allow) something, especially officially.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How were lot-based gambling games used in Renaissance-era Italy?
2. Did lotteries become spring up in a number of Italian cities including Florence, Rome, Milan and Venice beginning in the 1500s?
3. What did prizes include?
4. Who did people begin betting on?
5. What was the attitude of Pope and the church to the lottery in Rome?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Queen Elizabeth's National Lottery



Queen Elizabeth I medal, 16th century. (Credit: The Print Collector/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The first state lottery in English history dates to 1567, when Queen Elizabeth I organized a drawing to raise funds for the “reparation of the havens and strength of the Realm, and towards such other public good works.” The Queen’s lottery was somewhat unusual by modern standards. Lots cost 10 shillings a pop—a hefty sum at the time—and prizes were offered for over 10,000 of the participants, including 5,000 pounds sterling in cash, plate, tapestries and linens for the first place winner. Public response to the project was relatively tepid, but it marked the beginning of an English tradition of using lotteries to raise public funds. In the early 1600s, for example, the Virginia Company of London ran a lottery to help finance its Jamestown colony in North America.

- 1) a competition in which people whose names or tickets are chosen by chance win money or prizes;
- 2) payment made to someone for loss, damage etc that someone has caused them in the past;
- 3) a place where people or animals can live peacefully or go to in order to be safe;
- 4) a country ruled by a king or queen;
- 5) each particular occasion or object in a series;
- 6) large in amount or size;
- 7) a piece of cloth with a pattern or picture that is created by sewing or weaving different coloured threads onto a special type of strong cloth;
- 8) a piece of cloth with a pattern or picture that is created by sewing or weaving different coloured threads onto a special type of strong cloth;
- 9) an answer or reaction;
- 10) not enthusiastic, showing a lack of excitement or interest.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When was the first state lottery in English history held?
2. Why did Queen Elizabeth I organize a drawing?
3. Why was the Queen's lottery somewhat unusual by modern standards?
4. What prizes were offered for over 10,000 of the participants?
5. Why did the Virginia Company of London run a lottery in the early 1600s?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. The French National Lottery



Painting depicting the Royal Lottery. (Credit: De Agostini / M. Seemuller)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Lotteries first appeared in France in the 16th century, but they didn't experience a major boom until the mid-1700s. The French monarchy considered the lotto an easy way to raise money without levying new taxes, and the profits were eventually used to finance everything from churches and hospitals to military academies, universities and alms for the poor. To symbolize fairness, drawings were usually conducted by a blindfolded child, who would choose the winning tickets from a hopper attached to a spinning "wheel of fortune." The games became hugely popular, and by 1776, the profits were so large that King Louis XVI monopolized the industry and founded a new national lottery. Save for a brief period of suppression during the French Revolution, the lotto continued to exist in France until 1836, when it was finally abolished on the grounds that it exploited the poor. A state lottery wouldn't reappear in the country until the 1930s.

- 1) an increase in something, or a time when something becomes more popular;
- 2) (of a government or organization) to demand an amount of money, such as a tax, from a person or organization;
- 3) clothing, food, or money that is given to poor people;
- 4) the quality of treating people equally or in a way that is right or reasonable;

- 5) used to say someone's eyes are covered to stop them from seeing;
- 6) a large cone-shaped device into which substances such as grain, coal, or animal food can be put and from which they can be released when required;
- 7) to (cause to) turn around and around, especially fast;
- 8) in business, to control something completely and to prevent other people having any effect on what happens;
- 9) the act of preventing something from being seen or expressed or from operating;
- 10) to end an activity or custom officially.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did lotteries first appear in France?
2. Did lotteries experience a major boom until the mid-1700s?
3. What were the profits eventually used for?
4. Who were drawings usually conducted by?
5. When was the lotto finally abolished in France?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. The Spanish Christmas Lottery



*A winning ticket in a recent Christmas lottery.
(Credit: Jorge Guerrero/AFP/Getty Images)*

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Also known as “El Gordo,” or the “Fat One,” the Christmas lottery has been a holiday tradition in Spain for over 200 years. The contest originated in 1812, when the cash-strapped Spanish legislature organized a new national lottery to defray the costs of the Peninsular War. Orphan boys were used to draw the first winning tickets from gold pots, and to this day, students from a former boys’ home called the San Ildefonso School still announce the prizewinners each December 22. The lottery’s jackpot is the world’s largest—it totaled nearly \$2.5 billion in 2015—but it doesn’t all go to a single winner. Instead, the top prize is

limited to a few million dollars, allowing smaller amounts of cash to be dished out to thousands of different participants. Since its inception two centuries ago, El Gordo has been held every Christmas without fail. It even continued during the Spanish Civil War, when the dueling Nationalist and Republican governments both held their own drawings.

- 1) a competition or a situation in which two or more people or groups are competing with each other;
- 2) having little or no money at the moment;
- 3) an organization consisting of people who have been elected to make laws for a state or a country;
- 4) (especially of an organization) to pay the cost of something;
- 5) a child whose parents are dead;
- 6) to make something known or tell people about something officially;
- 7) the largest prize in a competition or game;
- 8) to distribute among a number of people;
- 9) the beginning of an organization or official activity;
- 10) involved in an angry disagreement.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the Christmas lottery in Spain originate?
2. Were orphan boys used to draw the first winning tickets from gold pots?
3. Who announces the prizewinners each December 22?
4. Has El Gordo been held every Christmas without fail since its inception two centuries ago?
5. Did it even continue during the Spanish Civil War?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

8. The Louisiana State Lottery Company



Tickets from the Louisiana State Lottery Company. (Credit: Public Domain)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Lotteries were a common in early America—Benjamin Franklin and George Washington both ran games in the 1700s—but by the late 19th century, scandal and moral opposition had seen them banned in many states. One of the few survivors was the Louisiana State Lottery Company, a powerful and privately owned outfit that was chartered shortly after the end of the Civil War. Though based in New Orleans, the company made most of its profits by selling mail-order lotto tickets across the country. Its reach was so vast that it earned the nickname the “Octopus,” but it also became infamous for its crooked business practices, which included greasing the palms of politicians and judges in exchange for preferential treatment. For a time, the company’s bribes ensured that it was the only legal lottery in the United States, but its 25-year reign finally came to an end in the 1890s, when Congress banned the sale of lottery tickets across state lines. After briefly operating offshore in Honduras, the Louisiana Lottery folded for good in the early 20th century. The fallout from its years of corruption was so severe that a new state lottery wasn’t launched in Louisiana until 1991.

- 1) (an action or event that causes) a public feeling of shock and strong moral disapproval;
- 2) a person or organization that continues to exist, especially after suffering difficulties;
- 3) an organization, company, team, military unit, etc.;
- 4) to officially start a new organization by giving it a charter;
- 5) an informal name for someone or something;
- 6) anything suggesting an octopus; esp., an organization with branches that reach out in a powerful and influential manner;
- 7) dishonest, criminal, illegal, corrupt;
- 8) the inner part of the hand from the wrist to the base of the fingers;
- 9) located in a place, usually an island, which has fewer tax regulations than most other countries;
- 10) the unpleasant consequences that follow something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What American presidents ran games in the 1700s?
2. Where was the Louisiana State Lottery Company based?
3. What was the State Lottery Company’s nickname?
4. Why did it become infamous?
5. Why was the Louisiana State Lottery Company the only legal lottery in the United States?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Найпопулярніші лотереї в різних країнах світу



<https://prizevarta.news/community-uk/naypopulyarnishi-lotereyi-v-riznih-krayinah-svitu/>

Давайте познайомимося з топ-5 найпопулярніших лотерей, у які грають по всьому світу.

«Powerball» – одна з найпопулярніших лотерей в США, яка розпочала свою історію ще в 1988 році. Початковий виграш цієї гри складає 40 мільйонів доларів, а декілька разів сума виграшу перевалювала за \$ 500 млн. Також у цій лотереї є функція «Power play». Вона доступна за додаткову доплату і дозволяє гравцеві збільшити одержуваний приз у три, чотири чи п'ять разів. Один з найбільших виграшів становив \$ 600 млн., і його володаркою в травні 2013 року стала 84-річна мешканка Флориди. Квитки для участі в лотереї можна придбати у 45 американських штатах, або з будь-якого куточку світу, реєструючись онлайн через спеціальний сервіс.

«Euro millions» була заснована в 2004 році, спочатку її проводили у Франції, Іспанії та Великобританії, а сьогодні вона проводиться в більше, ніж 10 країнах по всій Європі, у тому числі в Андоррі, Монако, Іспанії, Австрії, Бельгії, Великобританії, Португалії, Швейцарії, Ліхтенштейні та Люксембурзі. Мінімальний виграш складає €15 млн. Але часто може дорости €100 млн. У лотереї є 13 призових номінацій. Це дає гравцям хороші шанси для виграшу і більш високу ймовірність отримати який-небудь приз.

«Oz lotto» – одна з найпопулярніших лотерей в Австралії з мільйонами учасників з усього світу. Гравцям пропонується 7 призових номінацій і мінімальний джекпот у розмірі \$2 000 000 і це не межа для виграшу. Найбільший приз в цій лотереї – \$ 112 000 000. Розіграш проводиться кожного тижня по вівторках в Новому Південному Уельсі. А квитки можна придбати в торгових точках по всій Австралії, або ж у будь-якій точці світу через спеціальний інтернет-сервіс.

«Mega millions» бере свій початок у 2002 році. Тоді вона ще називалася The Big Game і вже потім була перейменована в Mega Millions і стала однією з найпопулярніших та найприбутковіших лотерей у світі. Грати в неї можуть мешканці всіх 44 штатів США, а також квитки можна придбати через інтернет по всьому світу за допомогою служби доставки. Мінімальна

сума, яку можна виграти – 15 000 000 доларів, але це не межа, інколи гравці зривали і по півтора мільярда доларів. У грі також наявний додатковий примножувач виграшу – Megaplier, з допомогою якого ваша сума виграшу може вирости аж до 5 разів. Mega Millions пропонує своїм гравцям призи в дев'яти номінаціях.

«Lotto 649» – це лотерея, яка належить Ontario Lottery and Gaming Corporation. Вона була заснована ще в 1982 році і на сьогодні пропонує своїм гравцям мінімальний джекпот у розмірі близько \$ 5 млн. Виграшну комбінацію лотереї складають 7 куль. Але максимальна сума джекпоту може становити \$ 50 млн. Також в лотереї існує гарантований призовий фонд у розмірі 1 000 000 доларів. Гравцям пропонується сім виграшних категорій. У 2013 році було виграно найбільший з призів – \$ 63,4 млн.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The Athenians of the 6th century B.C. selected most of their government officials , or “sortition.”

- a) through a system of special calculations
- b) through a system of random allotment
- c) through a system of electoral colleges
- d) through a system of regional elections

2. A collection of would be funneled into a tube on the side of the slab, and depending on where they landed, candidates would either be selected or dismissed.

- a) black and white beads
- b) grey and brown beads
- c) black and white pebbles
- d) grey and brown pebbles

3. The game of Keno is a fixture in modern day casinos, but its origins go back more than to Han Dynasty-era China.

- a) 2,000 years
- b) 1,000 years
- c) 2,500 years
- d) 1,300 years

4. Ancient Keno was known as “baige piao,” or and usually took the form of a lottery-style game in which players chose a series of numbers or characters and then received a prize if their picks came up in a random drawing.

- a) “black pigeon ticket,”
- b) “white pigeon ticket,”
- c) “white eagle ticket,”
- d) “black eagle ticket,”

5. In, disgraced legionaries and soldiers were sometimes punished with a brutal form of military justice known as “decimation.”

- a) ancient Kyiv
- b) ancient Athens
- c) ancient Beijing
- d) ancient Rome

6. If the members of a unit in ancient Rome were found guilty of cowardice or disobeying orders, their leaders would and randomly select one man out of every ten.

- a) hold a meeting
- b) hold an assemble
- c) hold a lottery
- d) hold a game

7. Many facets of modern lotteries date to, where lot-based gambling games were used both as private moneymaking schemes and methods of funding public works projects.

- a) Renaissance-era Italy
- b) Renaissance-era Greece
- c) Renaissance-era China
- d) Renaissance-era Egypt

8. The Italian lotteries were considered a useful method of fundraising—one was used to help build the famous Rialto Bridge —but they were also a source of controversy.

- a) in Rome
- b) in Milan
- c) in Florence
- d) in Venice

9. The first state lottery in English history dates to 1567, when organized a drawing to raise funds for the “reparation of the havens and strength of the Realm, and towards such other public good works.”

- a) King Alfred the Great
- b) King James VI
- c) Queen Elizabeth I
- d) Queen Anne

10. In the early 1600s, for example, the Virginia Company of London ran a lottery to help finance its Jamestown colony

- a) in North America
- b) in South America
- c) in Australia
- d) in Africa

11. Lotteries first appeared in France in the 16th century, but they didn’t experience a major boom until the

- a) mid-1700s
- b) early 1700s

c) mid-1800s

d) late 1800s

12. The games became hugely popular in France, and by 1776, the profits were so large that monopolized the industry and founded a new national lottery.

a) King Francis I

b) King Henry IV

c) King Louis IX

d) King Louis XVI

13. Also known as “El Gordo,” or the “Fat One,” the Christmas lottery has been a holiday tradition in Spain for over

a) 100 years

b) 200 years

c) 300 years

d) 400 years

14. Orphan boys were used to draw the first winning tickets from gold pots, and to this day, students from a former boys’ home called the San Ildefonso School still announce the prizewinners each

a) December 22

b) December 30

c) January 6

d) February 12

15. Lotteries were a common in early America—Benjamin Franklin and both ran games in the 1700s—but by the late 19th century, scandal and moral opposition had seen them banned in many states.

a) Franklin D. Roosevelt

b) Thomas Jefferson

c) Harry S. Truman

d) George Washington

16. The Louisiana State Lottery Company was based in, but it made most of its profits by selling mail-order lotto tickets across the country.

a) California

b) New Orleans

c) Florida

d) Georgia

UNIT XV

6 Historical Figures Who May or May Not Have Existed

<https://www.history.com/news/6-historical-figures-who-may-or-may-not-have-existed>

1. King Arthur



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The protector of Camelot is one of history's most well known monarchs, but many scholars believe his story to be a legend on par with the Sword in the Stone. The brave King Arthur is traditionally described as having repelled a Saxon attack on Britain in the 5th or 6th century. But while he supposedly won a series of 12 battles against the invaders, the great king is not named in the only surviving history of the conflict. In fact, a full depiction of Arthur did not surface until the 9th century, and an account of Lady Guinevere and the famous Knights of the Round Table only appeared with Geoffrey of Monmouth's 12th century text "History of the Kings of Britain."

Even if the modern depiction of Arthur as a knight in shining armor is a myth built up by books like Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte d'Arthur," some historians still believe these tales were based on a real person. Among other candidates, they argue the Arthur legend may have been inspired by the exploits of the warrior king Ambrosius Aurelianus, the monarch Riothamus or perhaps even a Roman general named Lucius Artorius Castus.

- 1) someone who protects someone or something;
- 2) in legends (traditional stories) about ancient Britain, the castle of King Arthur, and the knights who helped and advised him;
- 3) a very old story or set of stories from ancient times, or the stories, not always true, that people tell about a famous event or person;
- 4) to force someone or something to stop moving towards you or attacking you;
- 5) the way that something is represented or shown;
- 6) metal or leather clothing that protects your body, worn by soldiers in battles in past times;
- 7) an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events;

- 8) a story about exciting imaginary events;
- 9) to encourage someone by making them feel confident and eager to do something;
- 10) a brave and exciting adventure that someone has had.

II. Make sentences with these words.

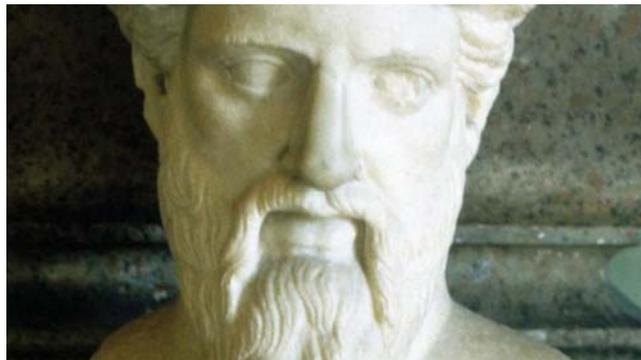
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was the protector of Camelot?
2. How is the brave King Arthur traditionally described?
3. Is the great king named in the surviving history of the conflict?
4. Is the modern depiction of Arthur as a knight in shining armor a myth built up by books like Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte d'Arthur?"
5. Who may the Arthur legend have been inspired by?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Pythagoras



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

We all learned about the Pythagorean Theorem in math class, but a similarly elegant proof is not available for the existence of its namesake. According to some accounts, the Greek thinker Pythagoras lived during the 5th and 6th century B.C. He is remembered as a philosopher and mathematician, but in ancient times he was better known as the spiritual father of a cult obsessed by numerology, the transmigration of the human soul and—quite bizarrely—the evils of eating beans.

While Pythagoras' hatred of legumes is well documented, there are no significant contemporary accounts of his life. All references to the great thinker—and perhaps also his famed ideas and formulas—came from his followers, who called themselves Pythagoreans. What stories we do have of Pythagoras are deeply intertwined with myth and the supernatural. One tale describes him as possessing a golden thigh; another declares he was the son of

the god Apollo. For some, these lies and contradictions hint that Pythagoras was simply an exaggerated or even fictional leader concocted by the members of a religious sect. Even if Pythagoras did exist, he probably wasn't the first to discover his famous theorem—evidence shows the Egyptians may have divined the formula much earlier.

- 1) a fact or piece of information that shows that something exists or is true;
- 2) a person or thing having the same name as another person or thing;
- 3) relating to deep feelings and beliefs, especially religious beliefs;
- 4) unable to stop thinking about something; too interested in or worried about something;
- 5) the act of passing into another body after death;
- 6) a plant that has its seeds in a pod, such as the bean or pea;
- 7) the part of a person's leg below the hip and above the knee;
- 8) the fact of something being the complete opposite of something else or very different from something else, so that one of them must be wrong;
- 9) to invent a story or excuse, esp. to deceive others;
- 10) to guess something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

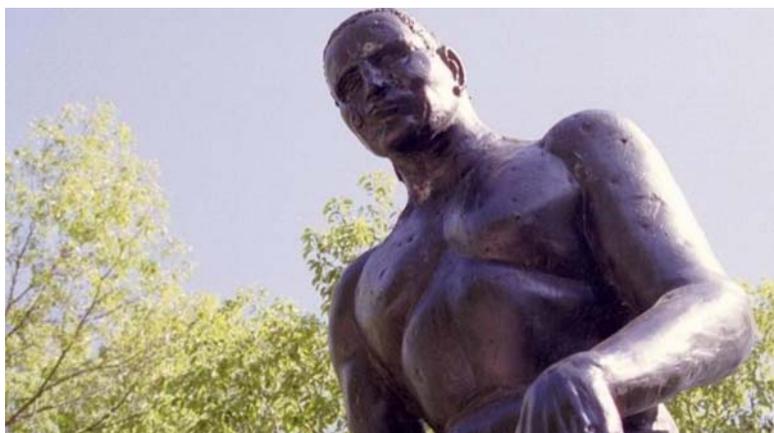
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the Greek thinker Pythagoras live?
2. Was he is a philosopher or a mathematician?
3. Was he better known as the spiritual father of a cult obsessed by numerology, the transmigration of the human soul and—quite bizarrely—the evils of eating beans in ancient times?
4. Are there any significant contemporary accounts of his life?
5. Was Pythagoras the first to discover his famous theorem?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. John Henry



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

According to a popular American folktale, a burly former slave and steel-driver named John Henry once took on a steam drill in a race to construct a railroad tunnel. Pushing his body to the limit, Henry narrowly won the battle between a man and machine, only to then collapse and die with his sledgehammer still in hand. This tale of grit and endurance was later immortalized in the folk song “The Ballad of John Henry” in the late 1800s.

The John Henry story is widely believed to have some basis in fact, and a few candidates have even emerged for the identity of its larger than life hero. John William Henry was a steel driver who died during the construction of the C&O Railway in Virginia, but there is no proof that he ever raced a machine. What’s more, records show that he stood only a little more than 5 feet tall—a far cry from the giant described in the legend. Yet another possibility is John Henry Dabney, a former slave who worked on the C&W railroad in Alabama. Witnesses reportedly claimed that Dabney went head-to-head with a steam drill in September 1887, though there is little hard evidence to back up their account.

- 1) big and strong;
- 2) a person who is legally owned by someone else and has to work for that person;
- 3) a tool or machine that makes holes;
- 4) a long passage under or through the ground, especially one made by people;
- 5) to fall down suddenly because of pressure or having no strength or support;
- 6) a large, heavy hammer with a long handle, used for breaking stones or other heavy material, or for hitting posts into the ground, etc.;
- 7) courage and determination despite difficulty;
- 8) the ability to keep doing something difficult, unpleasant, or painful for a long time;
- 9) someone who is taller or larger than usual;
- 10) a person who sees an event happening, especially a crime or an accident.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who took on a steam drill in a race to construct a railroad tunnel according to a popular American folktale?
2. What was the result of the battle between a man and machine?
3. When was this tale of grit and endurance immortalized in the folk song “The Ballad of John Henry”?
4. What was John William Henry?
5. Is there any proof that he ever raced a machine?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Homer



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Scholars have long speculated about the factual basis for the epic poet Homer's "The Iliad" and "The Odyssey," but the argument also extends to the bard himself. According to some theories, the greatest of all the Greek writers may not have existed, and even if he did, he is almost certainly not the sole author of his two famous works.

For so influential a figure, there are no contemporary accounts of Homer's life, which supposedly took place during the 7th or 8th century B.C. He is often described as a blind man who was born on the island of Chios, but even these details are up for debate. This lack of biographical information has led some to theorize that "The Iliad" and "The Odyssey" were actually written by a collection of different poets, or perhaps culled from popular stories passed down orally over generations. If this is true, Homer may have been responsible for first assembling the stories into coherent narratives, but he might also have been a composite figure invented as a way of giving the myths a single author.

- 1) to guess possible answers to a question when you do not have enough information to be certain;
- 2) a poet
- 3) being one only; single;
- 4) having a lot of influence on someone or something;
- 5) existing or happening now;
- 6) unable to see;
- 7) a piece of land completely surrounded by water;
- 8) (a) serious discussion of a subject in which many people take part;
- 9) to collect parts or pieces of something to use for another purpose;
- 10) a story or a description of a series of events.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Have scholars long speculated about the factual basis for the epic poet Homer's "The Iliad" and "The Odyssey"?
2. Was Homer the sole author of his two famous works?
3. Are there any contemporary accounts of Homer's life, which supposedly took place during the 7th or 8th century B.C?
4. How is he often described?
5. What has the lack of biographical information led to?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Robin Hood



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Robin Hood looms large in medieval folklore, but are tales of a bandit who stole from the rich and gave to the poor actually based on facts? Sherwood Forest's most famous outlaw first appeared in poems and ballads in the 14th and 15th centuries, and historical evidence shows that some criminals were known as "Rabunhod" or "Robehod" even earlier. Most of these literary accounts describe Robin as a commoner who led a gang of bandits in defiance of the hated sheriff of Nottingham. However, some subsequent versions reframe him as an aristocrat-turned-outlaw, along with adding many of the story's most popular supporting characters, like Maid Marian and Friar Tuck.

Researchers have tried to pin down the identity of a real life Robin Hood for centuries, but no clear candidate has emerged. The most popular account describes him as a follower of King Richard the Lionheart, but others label him as everything from the Earl of Huntingdon to a member of the Knights Templar. Still, an increasing number of historians now hold that stories of Robin Hood and his merry men were simply medieval myths that arose as popular fables about resistance to oppression.

1) related to the Middle Ages (= the period in European history from about AD 600 to AD 1500);

2) a thief with a weapon, especially one belonging to a group that attacks people travelling through the countryside;

3) (especially in the past) a person who has broken the law and who lives separately from the other parts of society because they want to escape legal punishment;

4) a song or poem that tells a story;

5) in the UK, a person who is not born into a position of high social rank;

6) a group of young people who spend time together and often cause trouble;

7) behaviour in which you refuse to obey someone or something;

8) in England and Wales, a person who represents the king or queen in a particular county, and whose duties are mainly in official ceremonies;

9) to change the way something is expressed or considered;

10) a short story that tells a general truth or is only partly based on fact, or literature of this type.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What are the tales of a bandit who stole from the rich and gave to the poor actually based on?

2. When did Sherwood Forest's most famous outlaw first appear in poems and ballads?

3. Does historical evidence show that some criminals were known as "Rabunhod" or "Robehod" even earlier?

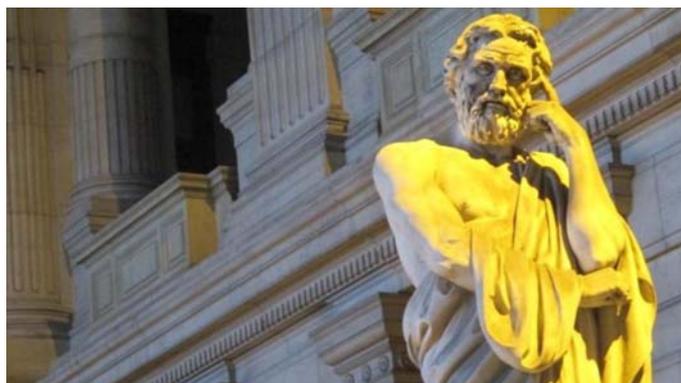
4. How do most of the literary accounts describe Robin?

5. What do most modern historians think about the stories of Robin Hood and his merry men?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Lycurgus



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Lycurgus is remembered as the man who shaped the Greek city-state of Sparta into one of the most feared military powers of the ancient world. Sometime between the 7th and 9th century B.C., this famed lawgiver is said to have instituted a series of hard-nosed reforms addressing everything from marriage and sex to wealth and childrearing. Perhaps the most famous of these concerned the creation of the agoge, a rigorous, multi-year training program designed to fashion Spartan boys into fearless warriors.

While there is no doubt that the Lycurgan reforms were enacted, historians are still unsure if the man himself actually existed. The Spartans did not record their history in writing, so most of what is known about their most prominent leader comes from later, often wildly contradictory sources. Lycurgus' biography is also filled with several mythical occurrences—one account claims he ended his life by self-enforced starvation—leading some to speculate that he was merely a god-like figure invented by the Spartans as a way to attribute their culture to the work of a single creator.

1) in the ancient world, a city and the area around it with an independent government;

2) someone or something, such as an organization or country, that has control over others, often because of authority, importance, or wealth;

3) to start or cause a system, rule, legal action, etc. to exist;

4) practical and determined;

5) the work of taking care of children until they are old enough to take care of themselves;

6) careful to look at or consider every part of something to make certain it is correct or safe;

7) a soldier, usually one who has both experience and skill in fighting, especially in the past;

8) something that happens;

9) the state of having no food for a long period, often causing death;

10) to say that a particular person was the first person to say something, do something, invent something, etc..

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who is remembered as the man who shaped the Greek city-state of Sparta into one of the most feared military powers of the ancient world?

2. When is this famed lawgiver said to have instituted a series of hard-nosed reforms addressing everything from marriage and sex to wealth and childrearing?

3. Are historians sure that Lycurgus himself actually existed?

4. Did the Spartans record their history in writing?

5. What mythical occurrences is Lycurgus' biography filled with?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Геракл та його 12 подвигів

<https://supermif.com › gerakl>



Геракл (за грецькою міфологією) — найбільший із Героїв, син Зевса і смертної жінки Алкмени. Зевсу необхідним був смертний Герой для перемоги над Гігантами, і він вирішив народити Геракла. Кращі наставники вчили Геракла різним мистецтвам, боротьбі, стрільбі із лука. Зевс хотів, аби Геракл став правителем Мікен або Тиринфа — ключових фортець на підходах до Аргосу, але ревнива Гера зруйнувала його плани. Вона вразила Геракла божевіллям, у випадку якого той вбив дружину і трьох своїх синів. Щоб спокутати тяжку провину, Герой повинен був дванадцять років служити Еврісфею, царю Тиринфа і Мікен, після чого йому було даровано безсмертя. Найбільш відомий цикл оповідей про дванадцять подвигів Геракла. Перший подвиг полягав у видобутку шкіри Немейського лева, якого Гераклу довелося задушити голіруч. Перемігши лева, носив його шкіру як трофей.

Наступним подвигом стала перемога над Гідрою, священною дев'ятиголовою змією Гери. Чудовисько мешкало в болоті біля Лерни, неподалік від Аргоса. Труднощі полягали в тому, що на місці відрубаної Героєм голови у Гідри тут же виростали дві нові. За допомогою свого племінника Юлая Геракл осилив люту Лернейську Гідру — хлопець припікав шию кожної відрубаної Героєм голови. Але подвиг не був зарахований Еврісфеєм, оскільки Гераклу допомагав племінник. Наступний подвиг не був таким кривавим. Гераклу слід було зловити Керинейську лань, священну тварину Артеміди. Згодом Герой зловив Еріманфського вепра, який спустошував поля Аркадії. При цьому випадково загинув мудрий Кентавр Хірон. П'ятим подвигом стало очищення Авгієвих стаєнь від гною, що Герой зробив за один день, направивши до них води найближчої річки. Останнім із подвигів, здійснених Гераклом на Пелопоннесі, було вигнання Стімфалійських птахів із загостреним залізним пір'ям. Злісні птахи злякались мідних тріскачок, виготовлених Гефестом і були даровані Гераклу прихильною до

нього Богинею Афіною. Сьомим подвигом було піймання лютого бика, якого Мінос, цар Криту, відмовився принести в жертву Богові моря Посейдонові. Бик зійшовся з дружиною Міноса Пасіфаєю, яка народила від нього Мінотавра — людину з бичачою головою. Восьмий подвиг Геракл зробив у Фракії, де підпорядкував своїй владі кобил-людодів царя Діомеда. Чотири подвиги, що залишились, були іншого роду. Еврісфей наказав Гераклу добути пояс цариці войовничих амазонок Іпполіти. Згодом Герой викрав і доставив до Мікени корів трьохголового велетня Геріона. Після цього Геракл приніс Еврісфею золоті яблука Гесперід, для чого йому довелося задушити велетня Антея і обдурити Атланта, що тримав на своїх плечах небозвід. Останній подвиг Геракла — подорож до царства мертвих — був самим тяжким. За сприяння цариці підземного світу Персефони, Герой зміг вивести звідти і доставити в Тиринф трьохголового пса Кербера (Цербера) — вартового пекла. Кінець Геракла був жахливий. Герой загинув у страшних муках, надягнувши сорочку, яку його дружина Деяніра за порадою вмираючого від руки Геракла Кентавра Несса змочила отруйною кров'ю цього напівлюдини-напівконя. Коли Герой із останніх сил зійшов на похоронне вогнище, з небес вдарила багряна блискавка і Зевс прийняв сина до сонму безсмертних. Деякі подвиги Геракла увічніні в назвах сузір'їв. Наприклад, сузір'я Лева — на згадку про Немейського лева, сузір'я Рака нагадує про величезного рака Каркіне, що був посланий на допомогу Лернейській Гідрі. У римській міфології Гераклу відповідає Геркулес.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The brave King Arthur is traditionally described as having repelled a Saxon attack on Britain in the

- a) 6th or 7th century
- b) 5th or 6th century
- c) 4th or 5th century
- d) 3rd or 4th century

2. In fact, a full depiction of Arthur did not surface until the 9th century, and an account of Lady Guinevere and the famous Knights of the Round Table only appeared with Geoffrey of Monmouth's 12th century text

- a) "History of the Kings of Britain."
- b) "History of the Queens of Britain."
- c) "History of the Kings of England."
- d) "History of the Queens of England."

3. According to some accounts, the Greek thinker Pythagoras lived during the 5th and 6th century B.C. He is remembered as a philosopher and mathematician, but in ancient times he was better known as the spiritual father of a cult

- a) obsessed by astronomy.
- b) obsessed by archeology.
- c) obsessed by geology.
- d) obsessed by numerology.

4. What stories we do have of Pythagoras are deeply intertwined with myth and the supernatural. One tale describes him as possessing ; another declares he was the son of the god Apollo.

- a) a golden arm
- b) a golden leg
- c) a golden thigh
- d) a golden foot

5. According to a popular American folktale, a burly former slave and steel-driver named once took on a steam drill in a race to construct a railroad tunnel.

- a) John Henry
- b) Tom Brown
- c) Adam Neckerman
- d) Mike Smith

6. This tale of grit and endurance was later immortalized in the folk song in the late 1800s.

- a) "The Ballad of John Henry"
- b) "The Ballad of Tom Brown"
- c) "The Ballad of Adam Neckerman"
- d) "The Ballad of Mike Smith"

7. For so influential a figure, there are no contemporary accounts of Homer's life, which supposedly took place during the For so influential a figure, there are no contemporary accounts of Homer's life, which supposedly took place during

- a) the 5th or 6th century B.C.
- b) the 7th or 8th century B.C.
- c) the 5th or 6th century A.D.
- d) the 7th or 8th century A.D.

8. He is often described as who was born on the island of Chios, but even these details are up for debate.

- a) a deaf man
- b) a mute man
- c) a blind man
- d) a strong man

9. Sherwood Forest's most famous outlaw first appeared in poems and ballads in the, and historical evidence shows that some criminals were known as "Rabunhod" or "Robehod" even earlier.

- a) 9th and 8th centuries
- b) 11th and 10th centuries
- c) 12th and 13th centuries
- d) 14th and 15th centuries

10. Most of the literary accounts describe Robin as a commoner who led a gang of bandits in defiance of the hated sheriff of

- a) Nottingham
- b) Blackpool
- c) Exeter
- d) Chester

11. Lycurgus is remembered as the man who shaped the into one of the most feared military powers of the ancient world.

- a) Greek city-state of Athens
- b) Greek city-state of Corinth
- c) Greek city-state of Rhodes
- d) Greek city-state of Sparta

12. Sometime between the, this famed lawgiver is said to have instituted a series of hard-nosed reforms addressing everything from marriage and sex to wealth and childrearing.

- a) 7th and 9th century B.C.
- b) 5th and 6th century B.C.
- c) 7th and 8th century A.D.
- d) 6th and 9th century A.D.

UNIT XVI

6 Child Monarchs Who Changed History

https://www.history.com/news/6-child-monarchs-who-changed-history?li_source=LI&li_medium=m2m-rcw-history

1. Ptolemy XIII Theos Philopator



Hulton Archive/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The 13th ruler of Egypt's Ptolemaic dynasty, Ptolemy XIII rubbed elbows with some of ancient history's most towering figures during his short life. The young pharaoh first came to power in 51 B.C. at the age of 11 or 12. He soon found himself overshadowed by his famous sister Cleopatra, whom he had married in accordance with ancient Egyptian custom. Jealous of her increasing celebrity, in 48 B.C. Ptolemy sparked a civil war after he plotted with influential members of the court and expelled Cleopatra from Egypt.

Ptolemy also allied himself with the Roman leader Pompey, who was then at war with Julius Caesar. When Pompey was defeated and arrived in Egypt seeking refuge, the teenage pharaoh had him assassinated in an attempt to impress Caesar and ingratiate himself to Rome. The plan proved unsuccessful, and after arriving in Egypt Caesar forced the boy ruler to reconcile with his sister. Ptolemy XIII eventually led an Egyptian army against the Romans, but Caesar soundly defeated his forces in a battle that resulted in the burning of the famed Library of Alexandria. The young ruler is then believed to have drowned in the Nile River as he tried to flee capture.

- 1) the part in the middle of the arm where it bends, or the part of a piece of clothing that covers this area;
- 2) very high and making people feel respect;
- 3) (the title of) a king of ancient Egypt;
- 4) unhappy and angry because someone has something that you want;
- 5) the state of being famous;
- 6) a secret plan made by several people to do something that is wrong, harmful, or not legal, especially to do damage to a person or a government;
- 7) (a place that gives) protection or shelter from danger, trouble, unhappiness, etc.;
- 8) to kill someone famous or important;
- 9) to make someone like you by praising or trying to please them;
- 10) that act of taking someone as a prisoner, or taking something into your possession, especially by force.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. At what age did the 13th ruler of Egypt's Ptolemaic dynasty, Ptolemy XIII first come to power?
2. Who did he soon find himself overshadowed by?
3. Who did Ptolemy also ally himself with?
4. What did Ptolemy do when Pompey had been defeated and arrived in Egypt seeking refuge?
5. How did Ptolemy die?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Fulin, the Shunzhi Emperor



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The third emperor of China's Qing Dynasty, 5-year-old Fulin (eventually known as the Shunzhi Emperor) rose to power in 1643 following the death of his father. Because he was so young, for the next several years China was ruled under the regency of his uncle, Dorgon. After Dorgon's death in 1650, 12-year-old Shunzhi took the reigns of the empire. Wary of power grabs from his political enemies, he soon fostered a precarious alliance with influential court eunuchs and made efforts to fight corruption and consolidate the empire under Qing rule.

The Shunzhi Emperor is today remembered as a remarkably open-minded leader. He devoted significant time to the study of science and astronomy and was also tolerant of various religions. Around 1652 he hosted an elaborate reception in Peking for the Fifth Dalai Lama, but he also regularly consulted with an Austrian Jesuit missionary named Johann Adam Schall von Bell. While he never became a Catholic, the emperor considered Schall one of his closest advisors and even referred to him as "grandfather." Shunzhi died from smallpox in 1661 at the age of 22. His son, the Kangxi Emperor, would go on to reign for over 60 years.

- 1) a period of time when a country is ruled by a regent;
- 2) not completely trusting or certain about something or someone;
- 3) to encourage the development or growth of ideas or feelings;
- 4) in a dangerous state because of not being safe or not being held in place firmly;
- 5) a man who has been castrated;
- 6) illegal, bad, or dishonest behaviour, especially by people in positions of power;
- 7) willing to consider ideas and opinions that are new or different to your own;
- 8) a formal party at which important people are welcomed;
- 9) a person who has been sent to a foreign country to teach their religion to the people who live there;
- 10) someone whose job is to give advice about a subject.

II. Make sentences with these words.

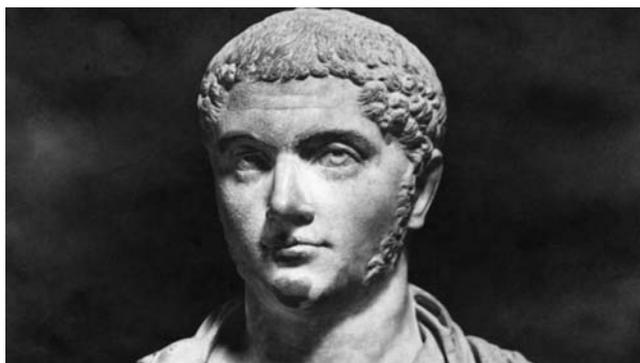
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the third emperor of China's Qing Dynasty, 5-year-old Fulin (eventually known as the Shunzhi Emperor) rise to power?
2. Why was China under the regency of his uncle, Dorgon?
3. How is Shunzhi Emperor remembered today?
4. What did he devote significant time to?
5. Who was one of the closest emperor's advisors?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Elagabalus



Hulton Archive/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The Roman emperor Elagabalus may have taken power at the tender age of 15, but his four-year reign was anything but innocent. A native of Syria, Elagabalus seized control of Rome in 218 after his mother and grandmother sparked a revolt by claiming he was the illegitimate son of the recently murdered emperor Caracalla. The young ruler wasted little time in causing controversy. Before he had even arrived in the capital city he installed the Syrian sun god Elagabal—whose cult he ruled as high priest—as the chief deity of Rome. He went on to shock the public with his sexual excesses, which supposedly included cross-dressing, prostitution and a romantic relationship with his chariot driver. Elagabalus also earned the scorn of Rome’s political class by allowing his mother to enter the male-only halls of the senate.

Already viewed by many in the empire as corrupt, Elagabalus caused yet another scandal when he married a vestal virgin—a class of priestesses who were supposed to remain chaste—and proclaimed their union would produce god-like offspring. His debauched behavior eventually alienated the Praetorian Guard, and in 222 the 18-year-old emperor was assassinated and replaced by his cousin, Alexander Severus. Elagabalus was later characterized as one of the most decadent of all Rome’s leaders, but some modern historians have argued that his eccentric behavior was likely exaggerated by his political enemies in an attempt to discredit him.

- 1) having no knowledge of the unpleasant and evil things in life;
- 2) an attempt to get rid of a government by using violence;
- 3) born of parents not married to each other;
- 4) a lot of disagreement or argument about something, usually because it affects or is important to many people;
- 5) a particular system of religious belief;
- 6) a person, usually a man, who has been trained to perform religious duties in the Christian Church, especially the Roman Catholic Church, or a person with particular duties in some other religions;
- 7) the legislative council of ancient Rome;
- 8) a person's child;
- 9) having low moral standards and interested mainly in pleasure;

10) to make something seem larger, more important, better, or worse than it really is.

II. Make sentences with these words.

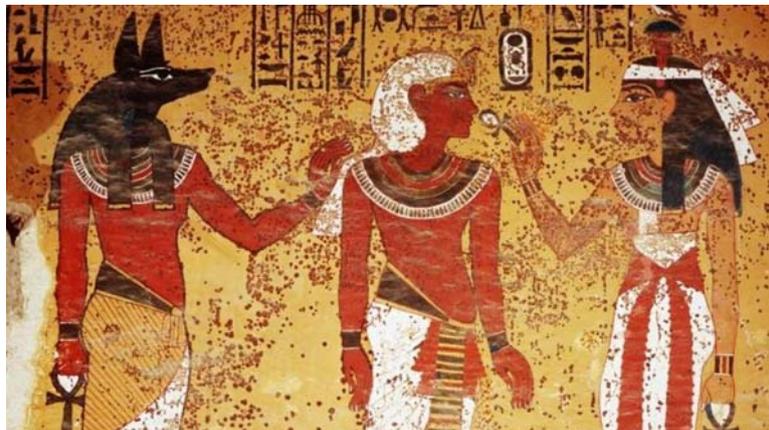
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did the Roman emperor Elagabalus take power?
2. When did a native of Syria, Elagabalus seize control of Rome?
3. What did he earn the scorn of Rome's political class by?
4. Already viewed by many in the empire as corrupt, Elagabalus caused yet another scandal when he married a vestal virgin, didn't he?
5. What do modern historians think about his eccentric behavior?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Tutankhamen



Gianni Dagli Orti/Corbis

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Most famously associated with the 1922 discovery of his tomb, Tutankhamen was an Egyptian pharaoh thought to have ruled for 10 years in the 14th century B.C. "King Tut" inherited the throne at the age of 9 or 10 and initially ruled Egypt under the direction of advisers due to his young age. While his reign was not a significant time in Egyptian history, Tutankhamen did institute some major societal changes. Most important was his reversal of the unpopular reforms of his father, the "heretic king" Akhenaten. Abandoning Akhenaten's decree that the sun god Aten be the sole deity, Tutankhamen reinstated the god Amun and restored Thebes as Egypt's capital city.

King Tut died mysteriously around the age of 19, but his most important contribution to history would come over 3,200 years later, when the British Egyptologist Howard Carter uncovered his final resting place in the Valley of the Kings. One of the best-preserved Egyptian burial sites ever discovered, Tutankhamen's tomb helped shape our modern understanding of ancient Egyptian royal customs.

- 1) to connect someone or something in your mind with someone or something else;
- 2) the process of finding information, a place, or an object, especially for the first time, or the thing that is found;
- 3) to receive money, property, or possessions from someone after the person has died;
- 4) the state of being a ruler;
- 5) the act of changing or making something change to its opposite;
- 6) someone who has an opinion that is opposite to or against the official or popular opinion;
- 7) an official statement that something must happen;
- 8) a god or goddess;
- 9) something that you contribute or do to help produce or achieve something together with other people, or to help make something successful;
- 10) a way of behaving or a belief that has been established for a long time among a group of people.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. At what age did “King Tut” inherit the throne?
2. How did he initially rule Egypt?
3. What major societal changes did Tutankhamen institute?
4. What god did Tutankhamen reinstate?
5. What was King Tut’s most important contribution to history?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Mary, Queen of Scots



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Mary Stuart—more famously known as Mary, queen of Scots—ruled as queen of two separate nations before she was 18 years old. Mary became queen of Scotland after her father died only six days after her birth in 1542. While she

was too young to govern, her position as a royal made the infant queen a very influential figure in international relations. Anxious to unite Scotland and England, in 1543 King Henry VIII proposed a future marriage between Mary and his son Edward. Political tensions between the two countries led the Scottish parliament to reject the engagement, and Mary was sheltered in various castles after Henry VIII invaded Scotland and tried to force the marriage in what became known as the “Rough Wooing.”

To keep her out of reach of the English, in 1548 the 5-year-old queen was taken to France. At 16 she married Francis II, briefly ruling as queen of France after he ascended the throne. Following Francis’ death, in 1561 Mary returned to Scotland to resume her duties as queen. She remarried twice as an adult, but a 1567 uprising forced to her abdicate the Scottish throne and flee to England. There she was imprisoned for nearly 19 years before being executed for her unwitting role in a plot to overthrow Queen Elizabeth I.

- 1) a woman who rules a country because she has been born into a royal family, or a woman who is married to a king;
- 2) to control and be responsible for the public business of a country, state, city, or other organized group;
- 3) a member of a royal family;
- 4) a baby or a very young child;
- 5) a legally accepted relationship between two people in which they live together, or the official ceremony that results in this;
- 6) a feeling of fear or anger between two groups of people who do not trust each other;
- 7) an act of opposition, sometimes using violence, by many people in one area of a country against those who are in power;
- 8) to make a formal statement that he or she no longer wants to be king or queen;
- 9) to kill someone as a legal punishment;
- 10) to defeat or remove someone from power, using force.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Was Mary Stuart more famously known as Mary, queen of Scots?
2. Why did King Henry VIII propose a future marriage between Mary and his son Edward?
3. What did political tensions between the two countries lead the Scottish parliament to?
4. Why was the 5-year-old queen taken to France?
5. Why was Mary, queen of Scots executed?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Baldwin IV of Jerusalem



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

King Baldwin IV not only saved Jerusalem from capture at the age of 16, but he did it while suffering from a debilitating disease. Born in 1161, Baldwin IV rose to power at the age of 15 following the death of his father, Amalric I. Despite suffering from leprosy since childhood, Baldwin IV would go on to repeatedly defend his Christian kingdom against Saladin, the famed Muslim military tactician who ruled as sultan of Egypt and Syria.

When Saladin moved toward the city of Ascalon in 1177, the young King Baldwin IV rushed to the site with only a small complement of infantry and a few hundred Knights Templar. Besieged within the city's walls by Saladin's superior numbers, Baldwin IV managed to break his army out of the fortress before routing the Muslim forces at the Battle of Montgisard. After securing a brief peace agreement with Saladin, the teenager returned to Jerusalem a hero. He would go on to fight many battles against Saladin's forces after the truce ended, often traveling in a litter when his leprosy made him too weak to ride a horse. Baldwin IV's condition worsened over the next several years, and he finally died in 1185 at the age of 23. Two years later Saladin would win a decisive victory at the Battle of Hattin and effectively topple the Kingdom of Jerusalem.

1) to get control of a place or object that previously belonged to an enemy, during a war;

2) making someone or something physically weak;

3) an infectious disease that damages a person's nerves and skin;

4) someone who is skilled in using tactics;

5) (in the past) a man of high social position trained to fight as a soldier on a horse;

6) to surround a city or castle with military force until the people inside let you take control;

- 7) to defeat someone completely in a battle, competition, or election;
- 8) a short interruption in a war or argument, or an agreement to stop fighting or arguing for a period of time;
- 9) a chair or bed for carrying important people, used in past times;
- 10) to become unsteady and then fall over, or to make something do this.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. At what age did King Baldwin IV save Jerusalem from capture?
2. What disease was he suffering from?
3. Did Baldwin IV repeatedly defend his Christian kingdom against Saladin, the famed Muslim military tactician who ruled as sultan of Egypt and Syria?
4. What did Baldwin IV manage to do being besieged within the city's walls by Saladin's superior numbers?
5. When did Saladin win a decisive victory at the Battle of Hattin?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Александр Македонський – полководець, який змінив світ

<https://vsviti.com.ua/interesting/history/60986>



Мабуть, кожна людина ще зі шкільної лави пам'ятає про те, хто такий Александр Македонський. Саме за Александра Македонського почався цілий історичний період, відомий як грецька епоха, а культурний вплив Греції на Європу, Азію і Африку під час його правління досягло піку. Ось декілька маловідомих фактів про цю дивовижну людину, яка прожила всього 32 роки, але зуміла повністю змінити світ.

Александр Македонський, також відомий як Александр III Великий, був царем Древньої Македонії, фараоном Єгипту, царем Азії і перським царем. Належав він до давньогрецької династії Аргеадів з Пелопоннесу. Його ім'я походить від грецьких слів «Alexo» (захищати) і «Andr» (людина). Таким чином, його ім'я означає «захисник людей».

Александр III Македонський народився в 356 році до н.е. Він був королем Македонської держави і створив одну з найбільших імперій у

давній історії. Він почав правити у віці 20 років, після того, як його батька царя Філіпа Македонського вбили в 336 році до н.е. Александр був однією з найненависніших політичних фігур античних часів. Духовні якості Александра Македонського викликали ненависть у багатьох. Неймовірні тактичні здібності й успішні військові кампанії по захопленню східних земель породили ненависть до нього у багатьох серцях.

Один з найвідоміших правителів і полководців у світовій історії Александр Македонський створив воістину величезну імперію, що розкинулася на половину відомого тоді світу. Правда, в результаті у нього вийшов «колос на глиняних ногах», і незабаром після його смерті держава розпалася. Однак, сам Александр Македонський, незважаючи на спірні рішення, зроблені ним у ході його завойовницьких походів, навіки увійшов в історію, як один з найвидатніших людей.

Батько Александра Філіп II Македонський найняв Аристотеля, одного з найвеличніших філософів в історії поряд з Сократом і Платоном, у якості вчителя для тринадцятирічного Александра. Аристотель навчав Александра всьому, що знав сам, протягом трьох років (до шістнадцятиріччя Александра, коли той вступив на престол Македонії). Мати Александра, Олімпіада Епірська була дочкою Епірського царя Неоптолема I.

Александр заснував понад сімдесят міст, з яких принаймні двадцять назвав на честь себе (найвідомішим є Александрія в Єгипті). Крім того, недалеко від місця битви біля річки Гідасп (сьогодні вона відома як річка Джелам в Індії) Александр заснував місто Буцефал, названий на честь його улюбленого коня, який був смертельно поранений в бою.

Незважаючи на те, що існувало багато теорій протягом довгих років, реальна причина смерті Александра залишається однією з таємниць стародавнього світу. Сучасні медичні експерти стверджують, що причинами могли бути малярія, інфекція легенів, печінкова недостатність або тиф. Однак, ніхто не може сказати нічого напевно.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. The 13th ruler of Egypt's Ptolemaic dynasty, Ptolemy XIII rubbed elbows with some of ancient history's most towering figures during his short life. The young pharaoh first came to power in 51 B.C.

- a) at the age of 15 or 16.
- b) at the age of 13 or 14.
- c) at the age of 11 or 12.
- d) at the age of 9 or 10.

2. Ptolemy XIII eventually led an Egyptian army against the Romans, but Caesar soundly defeated his forces in a battle that resulted in the burning of the

famed Library of Alexandria. The young ruler is then believed to have drowned in as he tried to flee capture.

- a) the Euphrates River
- b) the Nile River
- c) the Tigris River
- d) the Yellow River

3. The third emperor of China's Qing Dynasty, (eventually known as the Shunzhi Emperor) rose to power in 1643 following the death of his father.

- a) 4-year-old Fulin
- b) 5-year-old Fulin
- c) 6-year-old Fulin
- d) 7-year-old Fulin

4. Shunzhi died in 1661 at the age of 22. His son, the Kangxi Emperor, would go on to reign for over 60 years.

- a) from tuberculosis
- b) from diabetes
- c) from pneumonia
- d) from smallpox

5. The Roman emperor Elagabalus may have taken power at the tender age of 15, but his four-year reign was anything but innocent. A , Elagabalus seized control of Rome in 218 after his mother and grandmother sparked a revolt by claiming he was the illegitimate son of the recently murdered emperor Caracalla

- a) native of Syria
- b) native of Libya
- c) native of Tunisia
- d) native of Algeria

6. Elagabalus also earned the scorn of Rome's political class by allowing his mother to enter the male-only halls of

- a) the assemblies
- b) the congress
- c) the senate
- d) the rada

7. Most famously associated with the , Tutankhamen was an Egyptian pharaoh thought to have ruled for 10 years in the 14th century B.C.

- a) 1932 discovery of his tomb
- b) 1922 discovery of his tomb
- c) 1912 discovery of his tomb
- d) 1902 discovery of his tomb

8. King Tut died mysteriously around the age of 19, but his most important contribution to history would come over 3,200 years later, when the British Egyptologist Howard Carter uncovered his final resting place in the..... .

- a) Valley of the Kings
- b) Desert of the Kings

- c) Plato of the Kings
- d) Lowland of the Kings

9. Mary Stuart—more famously known as Mary, —ruled as queen of two separate nations before she was 18 years old.

- a) queen of English
- b) queen of Irish
- c) queen of Scots
- d) queen of Welsh

10. She remarried twice as an adult, but a 1567 uprising forced to her abdicate the Scottish throne and flee to England. There she was imprisoned for nearly 19 years before being executed for her unwitting role in a plot to overthrow

- a) Queen Eleanor of Aquitaine
- b) Queen Anne
- c) Queen Caroline of Ansbach
- d) Queen Elizabeth I

11. Despite suffering from leprosy since childhood, Baldwin IV would go on to repeatedly defend his Christian kingdom against Saladin, the famed Muslim military tactician who ruled as sultan of Egypt and Syria.

- a) leprosy
- b) tuberculosis
- c) diabetes
- d) asthma

12. When Saladin moved toward the city of Ascalon in 1177, the young King Baldwin IV rushed to the site with only a small complement of infantry and a few hundred Knights Templar. . Besieged within the city's walls by Saladin's superior numbers, Baldwin IV managed to break his army out of the fortress before routing the Muslim forces at the

- a) Battle of Jaffa
- b) Battle of Belvoir Castle
- c) Battle of Montgisard.
- d) Battle of Hattin

UNIT XVII

7 People Who Pretended to be Royals

<https://www.history.com/news/7-people-who-pretended-to-be-royals>

1. Anna Anderson as Anastasia Romanov



Anna Anderson and Grand Duchess Anastasia (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1918, Bolshevik revolutionaries murdered the Russian princess Anastasia, along with the rest of her family. However, rumors persisted of her alleged survival for decades and, over the years, several different impostors claimed to be Anastasia Romanova. None gained as much fame as Anna Anderson. The would-be royal first surfaced in the early 1920s in a Berlin mental asylum, where she announced that she was Grand Duchess Anastasia, the youngest daughter of the deceased Czar Nicholas II. Although most of the surviving Romanovs dismissed her as a fraud, the girl bore a striking resemblance to the princess and even knew many personal details of her life. She soon won the support of a coterie of wealthy Russian emigrants, many of whom believed she was the legitimate heir to the throne.

The supposed princess eventually moved to America in 1968 and took the name Anna Anderson. But while her story inspired several books and even a Hollywood movie, she failed to win recognition in court due to a lack of evidence. Her story remained the source of much debate until 1994, when a posthumous DNA test finally proved she was not related to the Romanov family. Anderson was likely a Polish factory worker who disappeared in 1920, but her true identity has never been confirmed.

1) (the title of) a woman who is married to a duke or who has the rank of duke;

2) an unofficial interesting story or piece of news that might be true or invented, and quickly spreads from person to person;

3) a person who pretends to be someone else in order to deceive others;

4) to become known;

- 5) to make something known or tell people about something officially;
- 6) to decide that something or someone is not important and not worth considering;
- 7) a small group of people with shared interests, often one that does not want other people to join them;
- 8) a place where trials and other legal cases happen;
- 9) who a person is, or information that proves who a person is, for example, their name and date of birth;
- 10) to prove that a belief or an opinion that was previously not completely certain is true.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1. When did Bolshevik revolutionaries murder the Russian princess Anastasia, along with the rest of her family?
- 2. Did rumors persist of her alleged survival for decades?
- 3. Was Anna Anderson the only impostor claimed to be Anastasia Romanova?
- 4. Where did the would-be royal first surface in the early 1920s?
- 5. What did she announce about herself?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Gregor MacGregor as the “Cazique of Poyais”



Dollar Bill from “Bank of Poyais”

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In the early 1820s, a dashing Scotsman named Gregor MacGregor rose to the top of London’s high society on the basis of a most unusual claim. A former soldier and mercenary who had fought in South America, MacGregor presented himself as the “cazique,” or prince, of a small Central American country he called

Poyais. As evidence, the faux royal produced several maps, drawings and even a book, all of which described the mysterious country as a fertile paradise with a working government and friendly native population. MacGregor's tiny principality seemed the perfect destination for European settlers, except for one small detail: It didn't exist.

Far from being a "cazique," MacGregor was actually a con man who had cooked up a fairy tale country as a way of bilking investors out of huge sums of money. He eventually sold thousands of pounds worth of land rights for his phantom nation, and in 1822 the first would-be "Poyers" set sail across the Atlantic Ocean. Arriving in Central America and finding only unsettled jungle, the pioneers—many of whom had converted their life savings into phony Poyais currency—soon realized they had been swindled. The stranded colonists were eventually rescued, but not before some 180 people perished from disease. Not surprisingly, MacGregor fled the country soon after the news reached England. He later resurfaced in France, but was arrested after he tried to set up a second Poyais-related scheme.

- 1) attractive in a confident, exciting, and stylish way;
- 2) a soldier who fights for a foreign country or group for pay;
- 3) not real, but made to look or seem real;
- 4) (of land) able to produce a large number of high-quality crops;
- 5) a place or condition of great happiness where everything is exactly as you would like it to be;
- 6) a country ruled by a prince, or from which a prince takes his title;
- 7) a person who puts money into something in order to make a profit or get an advantage;
- 8) used to describe something that you imagine exists or that appears to exist, although in fact it does not;
- 9) to get money dishonestly from someone by deceiving or cheating them;
- 10) to help someone or something out of a dangerous, harmful, or unpleasant situation.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did a dashing Scotsman named Gregor MacGregor manage to rise to the top of London's high society in the early 1820s?
2. How did a former soldier and mercenary who had fought in South America, MacGregor present himself?
3. Did MacGregor's tiny principality seem the perfect destination for European settlers?
4. What did the pioneers, many of whom had converted their life savings into phony Poyais currency realize when they arrived in Central America and found only unsettled jungle?
5. Why was MacGregor arrested?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. False Dmitry I



Capture of False Dmitry

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The man known as False Dmitry I not only successfully posed as a prince, he managed to con his way onto the royal throne of Russia. The pretender first became known to history in the early 1600s, when he appeared in Poland declaring himself to be Dmitry, the youngest son of the deceased Ivan the Terrible. The real Dmitry had supposedly been assassinated as a boy, but the imposter claimed he had escaped his would-be murderers and fled the country. The alleged royal went on to charm the Russian people, eventually riding a wave of public support all the way to Moscow.

False Dmitry was crowned czar in July 1605, but his rule was ultimately short-lived. The pretender's policies proved too radical for Russia's elites, and he was overthrown and assassinated less than a year later. Many have since speculated that his real name may have been Grigory Otrepyev, but this has never been proved. Amusingly, he was not the only impostor who claimed to be the real Dmitry. Two more pretenders emerged over the next decade, though neither succeeded in winning the throne.

- 1) catching someone in order to make him/her a prisoner;
- 2) not true, but made to seem true in order to deceive people;
- 3) to announce something clearly, firmly, publicly, or officially;
- 4) dead;
- 5) the one that someone says has happened or is true, although it has not been proved;
- 6) (before 1917) the Russian ruler;
- 7) the richest, most powerful, best-educated, or best-trained group in a society;

8) to guess possible answers to a question when you do not have enough information to be certain;

9) to say that something is true or is a fact, although you cannot prove it and other people might not believe it;

10) to appear by coming out of something or out from behind something.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Did the man known as False Dmitry I not only successfully pose as a prince, but managed to con his way onto the royal throne of Russia?

2. When did the pretender first become known to history?

3. Where did he declare himself to be Dmitry, the youngest son of the deceased Ivan the Terrible?

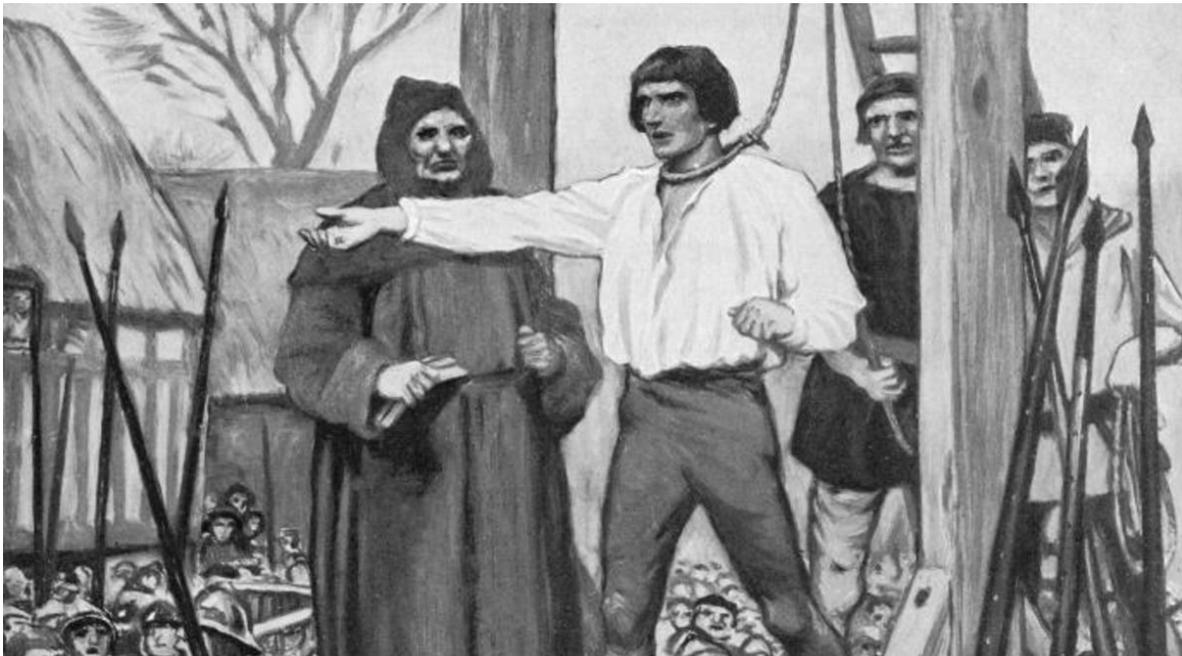
4. When was False Dmitry crowned czar?

5. What happened to him less than a year later?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Perkin Warbeck as Richard of York



Hanging of Perkin Warbeck (Credit: Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Not only did young Perkin Warbeck masquerade as a prince, he nearly succeeded in overthrowing King Henry VII of England. In 1491, Warbeck appeared in Ireland claiming he was Richard of York, the youngest son of the former King Edward IV. The real Richard was most likely murdered in the Tower

of London as a boy, but at the time there was still much speculation about his fate. Capitalizing on this mystery, Warbeck presented himself as the missing prince, and eventually won support among Henry VII's political enemies, who included such powerful figures as James IV of Scotland and Maximilian I of Austria.

Warbeck landed in Cornwall in 1497, and he soon galvanized his supporters into a rebel army of several thousand men. But when faced with the possibility of a battle with the king's forces, the pretender lost his nerve and fled to the coast. He was eventually captured, and later admitted he was an impostor before being executed by hanging in 1499. Warbeck is widely regarded as a famous fraud, but some historians have noted that Henry VII could have fabricated the pretender's backstory in an attempt to discredit him. With this in mind, there remains at least a small possibility that Warbeck may have actually been Richard of York.

- 1) the act of killing someone, especially as a punishment for a serious crime, by dropping that person with a rope tied around their neck;
- 2) a false show or appearance;
- 3) the activity of guessing possible answers to a question without having enough information to be certain;
- 4) an important male member of a royal family, especially a son or grandson of the king or queen;
- 5) to cause someone to suddenly take action, especially by shocking or exciting them in some way;
- 6) a person who states they have a right to the high position that someone else has, although other people disagree with this;
- 7) to escape by running away, especially because of danger or fear;
- 8) to invent or produce something false in order to deceive someone;
- 9) a set of events invented for a book, film, or play that have taken place before it begins;
- 10) to cause people to stop respecting someone or believing in an idea or person.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did Warbeck claim when he appeared in Ireland in 1491?
2. What do the historians know about the real Richard?
3. Who did Warbeck eventually win support among?
4. Did Warbeck land in Cornwall in 1497 or in 1597?
5. How was Warbeck executed?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Mary Baker as “Princess Caraboo”



Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

For several months in 1817, the village of Almondsbury, England fell under the spell of a phony island princess. The young woman had first appeared in the town clad in a black turban and speaking a mysterious language. Through a Portuguese translator, she identified herself as Princess Caraboo, a member of the royal family of Javasuu, a small Indian Ocean atoll. Even more astonishing, she claimed she had been kidnapped from her homeland by pirates, and had only escaped by plunging into the freezing Bristol Channel and swimming ashore.

The story of Princess Caraboo quickly took the town by storm. People flocked to get a look at the visiting royal, who slept on the floor, swam naked in a nearby lake and climbed trees to pray to a god called “Allah Tallah.” The fascination continued until a woman from a neighboring town noticed that her highness Princess Caraboo was in fact Mary Baker, an English girl who had previously been employed in her house as a servant. Baker later admitted that she had invented the princess and her bizarre language as part of an elaborate con, and the story of the hoax went on to become a minor sensation in the British press.

- 1) a period of time for which an activity or condition lasts continuously;
- 2) not sincere or not real;
- 3) (of people) dressed, or (of things) covered;
- 4) a head covering made from a long piece of cloth that is wrapped around the head;
- 5) a ring-shaped island formed of coral (= rock-like natural substance) that surrounds a lagoon (= area of sea water);
- 6) the crime of taking someone away by force and demanding money in exchange for releasing them;
- 7) a person who sails in a ship and attacks other ships in order to steal from them;
- 8) very strange and unusual;

- 9) something done to trick or deceive someone;
- 10) a plan to deceive a large group of people; a trick.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1. What happened in the village of Almondsbury, England in 1817?
- 2. How did the young woman look?
- 3. How did she identify herself?
- 4. Why did the story of Princess Caraboo quickly take the town by storm?
- 5. Who was Princess Caraboo in fact?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Yemelyan Pugachev as Peter III



Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

In 1773, a royal impostor sparked one of the largest revolts in Russian history. Capitalizing on his striking resemblance to the murdered Peter III, a former soldier named Yemelyan Pugachev took on the identity of the late emperor and incited a massive peasant uprising against Catherine the Great. As Peter III, Pugachev promised populist reforms including autonomy for Russia's Cossack population an end to the feudal system, and soon thousands of serfs had rallied to his standard.

Initially catching the empress by surprise, Pugachev's army laid siege to the city of Orenburg in late 1773, and then proceeded to raze Kazan the following year. But despite these early successes, by late 1774 Catherine's generals had started to turn the tide of the conflict. Following a decisive defeat at

Tsaritsyn, a group of Pugachev's lieutenants betrayed him and turned him over to the empress. The impostor was executed in early 1775, and his revolt crumbled soon thereafter.

- 1) an attempt to get rid of a government by using violence;
- 2) take the chance to gain advantage from;
- 3) murder - to commit the crime of intentionally killing a person;
- 4) used to refer to someone who has died;
- 5) to encourage someone to do or feel something unpleasant or violent;
- 6) trying to be popular with ordinary people and to represent their ideas and opinions;
- 7) a member of a low social class in medieval times who worked on the land and had to obey the person who owned that land;
- 8) a female ruler of an empire, or the wife of a male ruler of an empire;
- 9) (the title of) an officer of middle rank in the armed forces;
- 10) to be not loyal to your country or to someone who believes you are loyal, often by doing something harmful.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did a former soldier named Yemelyan Pugachev manage to take on the identity of the late Peter III and incite a massive peasant uprising against Catherine the Great?
2. What did Pugachev as Peter III promise to do?
3. Initially catching the empress by surprise, Pugachev's army laid siege to the city of Orenburg in late 1773, didn't it?
4. When did Catherine's generals start to turn the tide of the conflict?
5. Who betrayed Pugachev and turned him over to the empress?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. Karl Wilhelm Naundorff as Prince Louis-Charles



Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Although he spent his life as a watchmaker and clock salesman, German swindler Karl Wilhelm Naundorff went to his grave insisting he was the rightful king of France. Naundorff arrived in Paris in the 1830s claiming to be Prince Louis-Charles, the son of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette, both of whom were beheaded during the French Revolution. Naundorff was only one of several men who professed to be the long-dead dauphin, but he soon succeeded in winning the confidence of many high profile figures including the prince's former governess.

Despite having several physical characteristics in common with the Prince Louis-Charles, Naundorff never provided sufficient evidence for his assertion, and he was eventually branded a fraud. Even Princess Marie Therese—his supposed sister—refused to meet with him. After being expelled from France, Naundorff lived out his later years in the Netherlands, where he was recognized as Louis-Charles until his death in 1845. The mystery of his true identity would endure for another 150 years, but Naundorff was finally exposed as an impostor in the early 21st century, when DNA evidence proved he was not related to Marie Antoinette.

- 1) a person who makes and repairs watches and clocks as a job'
- 2) someone who gets money dishonestly by deceiving or cheating people;
- 3) a place in the ground where a dead person is buried;
- 4) to state something, sometimes in a way that is not sincere;
- 5) in the past, the heir to the king of France;
- 6) (especially in the past) a woman who lives with a family and teaches their children at home;
- 7) a statement that you strongly believe is true;
- 8) someone who deceives people by saying that they are someone or something that they are not;
- 9) something strange or unknown which has not yet been explained or understood;
- 10) a person who pretends to be someone else in order to deceive others.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was Karl Wilhelm Naundorff ?
2. Who did Naundorff claim to be when he arrived in Paris in the 1830s?
3. Did Naundorff ever provide any sufficient evidence for his assertion?
4. Where did Naundorff live after being expelled from France?
5. When was Naundorff finally exposed as an impostor?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Тушинський злодій або чому Лжедмитрій II не зміг стати справжнім російським царем

<https://lenta.ru/articles/2015/05/17/tushin/>



З появою в 1607 році другого російського самозванця, який прийняв ім'я царя Дмитра Івановича, почалася повномасштабна громадянська війна, яка охопила весь центр країни, яка поставила Росію на грань загибелі і призвела до іноземного вторгнення.

На портретах XVII століття Лжедмитрій II зображувався як Лжедмитрій I, що, звичайно ж, аж ніяк не випадково, оскільки новий, другий самозванець видавав себе вже не за царевича Дмитра, сина Івана Грозного, який нібито врятувався колись в Угличі, а за «царя Дмитра» (Григорія Отреп'єва), 30 липня 1605 року вінчаного на царство, і нібито дивом уникнув смерті 17 травня 1606 року (багато хто запевняв, що тоді замість царя був убитий його двійник).

Ймовірно, зовні Лжедмитрій II дійсно був схожий на попередника. Що ж стосується всього іншого, то другий самозванець був повною протилежністю Григорію Отреп'єву. Російський історик Сергій Платонов зазначав, що Лжедмитрій I справді був керівником піднятого їм руху. «Злодій же [Лжедмитрій II], - підкреслював дослідник, - вийшов на свою справу з в'язниці і оголосив себе царем під страхом побоїв і тортур.

Перші звістки про Лжедмитрія II датуються зимою 1607 року, коли в Литві виявився претендент, який чудом врятувався від царя Дмитра. Цей самозванець був тоді одним з багатьох, хто видавав себе за царську особу. Серед козаків з'явилися розмови «царевич Петро Федорович» (нібито син царя Федора, тобто онук Івана Грозного) і «царевич Іван-Август» (нібито син Івана Грозного від шлюбу з Анною Колтовською). Перший проливав кров на півдні Росії, а потім возз'єднався з воєводою «царя Дмитра» Іваном Болотніковим у Тулі. Другий діяв в Нижньому Поволжі, де йому скорилася Астрахань. Слідом за ними показався ще один «онук» Грозного, «син» царевича Івана Івановича - «царевич Лаврентій». У козачих станицях самозванці росли як гриби: з'явилися «діти» царя Федора Івановича - «принци» Сімеон, Савелій, Василь, Климентій, Ерошка, Гаврилка.

У травні 1607 Лжедмитрій II перейшов російсько-польський кордон, об'явився в Стародубі і був визнаний місцевими жителями. Його військо

поповнювалося настільки повільно, що тільки у вересні він зміг на чолі загонів польських найманців, козаків і російських злодіїв (зłodіями в той час іменували різних злочинців, в тому числі і політичних – заколотників) рушити на допомогу Лжепетра і Болотнікова. Самозванець 8 жовтня розбив під Козельськом царського воєводу князя Василя Федоровича Мосальського, 16-го захопив Білів, але, дізнавшись про те, що цар Василь Шуйський взяв охоплену смутою Тулу і полонив Болотнікова і Лжепетра, втік з-під Белева до Карачева.

Смерть Лжедмитрія II мала величезне значення, зумовивши подальший розвиток подій. Рух, спрямований проти поляків і росіян - зрадників, звільнився від авантюрного елемента, пов'язаного з особистістю самозваного претендента на престол. Тепер основними гаслами противників польського панування стали вигнання іноземців і скликання Земського собору для виборів нового законного царя (на той час Василь Шуйський був позбавлений влади – 17 липня 1610 року). Особи, що раніше підтримували поляків зі страху перед самозванцем, стали переходити на бік їхніх супротивників. Разом з тим анархістські елементи втратили свою головну опору: втративши ідеї служби «законному царю», вони перетворилися у звичайних розбійників. Син Марини Мнішек і Лжедмитрія II Іван, який отримав в Москві прізвисько «Ворьонок», був занадто малий, щоб стати новим вождем руху.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. In 1918, Bolshevik revolutionaries murdered , along with the rest of her family. However, rumors persisted of her alleged survival for decades.

- a) the Russian princess Olga
- b) the Russian princess Tatiana
- c) the Russian princess Maria
- d) the Russian princess Anastasia

2. Over the years, several different impostors claimed to be Princess Romanova. One of the supposed princesses eventually moved to America in 1968 and took the name

- a) Anna Anderson
- b) Olga Anderson
- c) Tatiana Anderson
- d) Anastasia Anderson

3. In the early 1820s, a dashing Scotsman named Gregor MacGregor rose to the top of London's high society on the basis of a most unusual claim. A former soldier and mercenary who had fought in South America, MacGregor presented

himself as the “cazique,” or prince, of a small Central American country he called

- a) Royais.
- b) Poyais.
- c) Noyais.
- d) Soyais.

4. MacGregor’s tiny principality seemed the perfect destination for European settlers, except for one small detail:

- a) It was high in the mountains.
- b) It was in a desert.
- c) It didn’t exist.
- d) There was no water.

5. The man known as False Dmitry I first became known to history in the early 1600s, when he appeared in Poland declaring himself to be Dmitry, the youngest son of the deceased

- a) Ivan IV the Terrible.
- b) Vasily II the Blind.
- c) Ivan III the Great.
- d) Simeon the Proud.

6. False Dmitry was crowned czar, but his rule was ultimately short-lived.

- a) in July 1605
- b) in July 1505
- c) in July 1405
- d) in July 1305

7. Not only did young Perkin Warbeck masquerade as a prince, he nearly succeeded in overthrowing

- a) King Edward IV of England
- b) King Richard III of England
- c) King Henry VII of England
- d) King Charles I of England

8. Warbeck presented himself as the missing prince, and eventually won support among political enemies, who included such powerful figures as James IV of Scotland and Maximilian I of Austria.

- a) King Edward IV’s
- b) King Richard’s
- c) King Henry VII’s
- d) King Charles I’s

9. For several months in 1817, the village of Almondsbury,/ fell under the spell of a phony island princess.

- a) England
- b) Scotland
- c) Wales
- d) Ireland

10. she claimed she had been kidnapped from her homeland by, and had only escaped by plunging into the freezing Bristol Channel and swimming ashore.

- a) smugglers
- b) pirates
- c) nomads
- d) outlaws

11. In 1773, a royal impostor sparked one of the largest revolts in Russian history. Capitalizing on his striking resemblance to the murdered Peter III, a former soldier named Yemelyan Pugachev took on the identity of the late emperor and incited a massive peasant uprising against

- a) Eleanor of Aquitaine.
- b) Bloody Mary.
- c) Elizabeth I.
- d) Catherine the Great.

12. Following a decisive defeat at, a group of Pugachev's lieutenants betrayed him and turned him over to the empress.

- a) Kazan
- b) Orenburg
- c) Saratov
- d) Tsaritsyn

13. Although he spent his life as a watchmaker and clock salesman, German swindler Karl Wilhelm Naundorff went to his grave insisting he was the rightful

- a) king of France.
- b) king of Austria.
- c) king of Germany.
- d) king of the Netherlands.

14. Naundorff arrived in Paris in the 1830s claiming to be Prince Louis-Charles, the son of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette, both of whom were beheaded during

- a) the German Revolution
- b) the French Revolution
- c) the Dutch Revolution
- d) the British Revolution

UNIT XVIII

7 Historical Figures Who Grew Up as Orphans

<https://www.history.com/news/7-historical-figures-who-grew-up-as-orphans>

1. Alexander Hamilton



Alexander Hamilton (Credit: DeAgostini/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The United States' first secretary of the treasury was always tight-lipped about his upbringing, which he called "the subject of the most humiliating criticism," but there's little doubt that it was a struggle. Born in 1755 (some sources say 1757) on the Caribbean island of Nevis, Hamilton was the illegitimate son of a Scottish father and a French Huguenot mother who was still married to another man. His father abandoned the family when Alexander was 10, and his mother died from fever just a few years later, leaving Hamilton and his brother orphans. A cousin tapped to serve as the boys' guardian later committed suicide, but by then the teenaged Hamilton had secured a job as a clerk at an import-export firm on St. Croix. His intellect impressed his managers, and in 1773 a group of local businessmen put up the money to send him to New York, where he studied at what would eventually become Columbia University.

Once on the mainland, Hamilton delved into colonial politics and served as an aide-de-camp to General George Washington during the American Revolution. The man that John Adams once called "the bastard brat of a Scottish peddler" would go on to play a pivotal role in shaping the American political system. Before his death in 1804, he served as a delegate to the Constitutional Convention, authored many of the Federalist Papers and helped establish the United States' first national bank.

1) the government department, in the UK and some other countries, that is responsible for financial matters such as spending and tax;

2) refusing to say very much about something;

3) the way in which you are treated and educated when young, especially by your parents, especially in relation to the effect that this has on how you behave and make moral decisions;

4) a medical condition in which the body temperature is higher than usual and the heart beats very fast;

5) a person who has the legal right and responsibility of taking care of someone who cannot take care of himself or herself, such as a child whose parents have died;

6) the act of killing yourself intentionally;

7) the main part of a country or continent, not including the islands around it;

8) a military or naval officer who helps an officer of higher rank;

9) a person born to parents who are not married to each other;

10) central and important.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did the United States' first secretary of the treasury call his upbringing?

2. When and where was he born?

3. Who were his parents?

4. Did Hamilton serve as an aide-de-camp to General George Washington during the American Revolution?

5. What did he help to establish?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Andrew Jackson



Andrew Jackson's White House portrait.

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Although he was just 8 years old when it began, Andrew Jackson sacrificed a great deal during the American Revolution. The son of Irish immigrants had already lost his father shortly before he was born, and he was forced to grow up quickly while serving as a Continental courier in the backcountry of the

Carolinas. In 1781, 13-year-old Andrew and his brother Robert were captured by a group of British soldiers, one of whom slashed the future president with a sword after the boy refused to clean his boots. Robert would later die from smallpox while in enemy hands, and Jackson's mother perished that same year.

Having lost all the members of his immediate family, Jackson briefly lived with relatives before striking out on his own and working as a saddle maker and schoolteacher. Despite having little formal education, he later distinguished himself as a lawyer and politician before winning fame as a general during the War of 1812. Jackson never had any kids of his own, but before winning the White House in 1828, the former orphan served as the guardian to several different parentless children. He also adopted two Native American boys whose families had been killed during his military campaigns.

1) to willingly stop having something you want or doing something you like in order to get something more important;

2) someone who enters another country to live there permanently;

3) a person or company that is paid to take packages somewhere;

4) an area, especially in the mountains, away from roads and towns;

5) to die, especially in a terrible or sudden way;

6) members of your family who are most closely related to you, for example your parents, children, brothers, and sisters;

7) a leather seat that you sit on when you ride a horse;

8) the state of being known or recognized by many people because of your achievements, skills, etc.

9) to take someone else's child into your home and legally become its parent;

10) a series of battles, attacks etc intended to achieve a particular result in a war.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Did Andrew Jackson serve as a Continental courier in the backcountry of the Carolinas?

2. Who were 13-year-old Andrew and his brother Robert captured by?

3. Why did one of the British soldiers slash the future president with a sword?

4. Did Andrew Jackson have formal education to distinguish himself as a lawyer and politician?

5. Did Jackson have his own kids?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Simón Bolívar



Portrait of Simón Bolívar. (Credit: DeAgostini/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Simón Bolívar was born in 1783 into one of the most prosperous families in Spanish Venezuela, yet his childhood was anything but idyllic. The future revolutionary never knew his father, who died before his third birthday, and he later lost his mother to illness when he was 9. The young orphan briefly lived with his grandfather before being passed off to his uncles, but according to Bolívar, his true guardian was a black slave nurse named Hipólita, who he regarded as an adoptive parent. “Her milk has nourished my life and she is the only father I have known,” he once wrote. Thanks to his family’s considerable financial means, Bolívar received a top-notch education in Europe.

After returning to Venezuela in 1807, he became a leading voice in the territory’s fight for independence from Spain. He served as a militia commander and politician during the Venezuelan War of Independence, and later took part in military campaigns that led to the formation of a half-dozen South American states including Colombia, Ecuador and Peru. By the time of his death in 1830, the orphaned aristocrat was known across the continent as “El Libertador,” or “The Liberator.”

- 1) successful, usually by earning a lot of money;
- 2) a woman employed to take care of a young child or children;
- 3) one who has adopted a child;
- 4) to provide people or living things with food in order to make them grow and keep them healthy;
- 5) excellent; of very good quality;
- 6) freedom from being governed or ruled by another country;
- 7) a military force whose members are trained soldiers but who often have other jobs;
- 8) a person who is active in politics, esp. as a job;
- 9) a person of high social rank who belongs to the aristocracy;
- 10) someone or something that helps a person or thing be free.

II. Make sentences with these words.

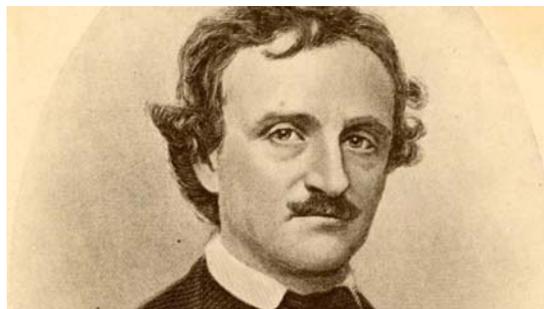
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When and where was Simón Bolívar born?
2. Did the future revolutionary know his father and mother?
3. Who was his true guardian?
4. When did Simón Bolívar become a leading voice in the territory's fight for independence from Spain?
5. Did he take part in military campaigns that led to the formation of a half-dozen South American states including Colombia, Ecuador and Peru?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Edgar Allan Poe



Credit: Universal History Archive/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The sense of dread and despair that permeates much of [Edgar Allan Poe's](#) writing may have its roots in his unhappy childhood. The author of "[The Raven](#)" and "The Tell-Tale Heart" was born in 1809 into a penniless family of traveling actors, and by his third birthday his father had left and his mother had died of tuberculosis. Poe was raised by a Richmond, Virginia, tobacco merchant named John Allan—whose name he eventually took—but the two had a rocky relationship. Allan was not supportive of Poe's literary aspirations, and young Edgar enraged his guardian by racking up considerable gambling debts during a stint at the University of Virginia.

Poe was later disinherited after the two fell out in the early 1830s, at which point he embarked on a roving writing career that took him to Richmond, Philadelphia, New York and Baltimore. His life was cut short after he died under still-mysterious circumstances in 1849, but his many poems and short stories are now credited with influencing everything from detective fiction to the horror and science fiction genres.

- 1) a strong feeling of fear or worry;
- 2) the feeling that there is no hope and that you can do nothing to improve a difficult or worrying situation;
- 3) the largest bird in the crow family, with shiny black feathers;

- 4) a serious infectious disease that can attack many parts of a person's body, especially their lungs;
- 5) a person whose business is buying and selling goods for profit;
- 6) showing agreement and giving encouragement;
- 7) something that you hope to achieve;
- 8) to prevent someone, especially a son or daughter who has made you angry, from receiving any of your property after your death;
- 9) strange, not known, or not understood;
- 10) the type of book or story that is written about imaginary characters and events and not based on real people and facts.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When was the author of “The Raven” and “The Tell-Tale Heart” born?
2. What were his parents?
3. Who was Poe raised by?
4. Why did young Edgar enrage his guardian?
5. What are his many poems and short stories now credited with?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Ella Fitzgerald



Jazz singer Ella Fitzgerald. (Credit: George Konig/Keystone/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

[Ella Fitzgerald](#) traveled a difficult path on her way to becoming America’s “First Lady of Song.” Her parents split shortly after her birth in 1917, and her mother died unexpectedly when Ella was just 15. The aspiring entertainer was sent to live with an aunt in Harlem, but she soon drifted to the streets and worked as a lookout for a brothel and a numbers runner for an illegal lottery. Fitzgerald’s frequent absences from school eventually saw her placed in New York’s Colored Orphan Asylum, where she remained for over a year before running away.

She lived for a time on the streets of Harlem, dancing for spare change and sleeping in friends' homes, but she finally caught a break in 1934, when she won an amateur singing contest at the [Apollo Theater](#). Fitzgerald's tuneful, versatile voice soon earned her a gig with bandleader Chick Webb and his orchestra. By 1938—just six years after the death of her mother—she had scored her first hit with the song “A-Tisket, A-Tasket.”

- 1) a set of actions, especially ones that lead to a goal or result;
- 2) to end a marriage or relationship with each other;
- 3) someone whose job is to entertain people by singing, telling jokes, etc.;
- 4) a person who watches for danger;
- 5) a place where men go and pay to have sex with prostitutes;
- 6) not allowed by law;
- 7) a mental hospital, or any other institution giving shelter and other help to poor or suffering people;
- 8) taking part in an activity for pleasure, not as a job;
- 9) a single performance by a musician or group of musicians, especially playing modern or pop music;
- 10) a thing or person that is very popular or successful.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Did Ella Fitzgerald travel a difficult path on her way to becoming America's “First Lady of Song”?
2. Who was the aspiring entertainer sent to live with?
3. Did Ella work as a lookout for a brothel and a numbers runner for an illegal lottery?
4. When did she win an amateur singing contest at the Apollo Theater?
5. What song was her first hit?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Marilyn Monroe



Actress Marilyn Monroe, 1955. (Credit: Baron/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Long before she became Hollywood's most iconic blond bombshell, Marilyn Monroe was Norma Jeane Baker, the daughter of a single mother in Los Angeles. Monroe would later describe her childhood as being almost completely devoid of happiness. She never knew her father, and her mother suffered from recurring psychiatric problems that eventually saw her committed to an institution. With no parental support, young Norma Jeane spent the majority of her childhood in a string of orphanages and foster homes, including some in which she was sexually abused.

She finally left the foster system at age 16, when she married a neighbor named James Dougherty, who soon shipped out for service in World War II. Norma Jeane began working in a wartime factory, and it was there that an army photographer spotted her and suggested that she try her hand at modeling. She proved to be natural in front of the camera, and by 1946 she had dyed her hair blond, changed her name to Marilyn Monroe and started a new career as an actress. Her big break followed in 1950, when she nabbed memorable roles in the films "The Asphalt Jungle" and "All About Eve."

- 1) very famous or popular, especially being considered to represent particular opinions or a particular time;
- 2) a very attractive person;
- 3) to lack or be without something that is necessary or usual;
- 4) happening many times;
- 5) a home for children whose parents are dead or unable to care for them;
- 6) to leave a place, especially by ship;
- 7) the job of wearing clothes, jewelry, etc. in order to advertise them;
- 8) a woman who pretends to be someone else while performing in a film, play, or television programme;
- 9) to get something or someone quickly, especially before anyone else can get them;
- 10) a forest in one of the hottest regions of the earth, where trees and plants grow very close together.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was Marilyn Monroe's name long before she became Hollywood's most iconic blond bombshell?

2. How would Monroe later describe her childhood?

3. Where did young Norma Jeane spend the majority of her childhood?

4. When did Norma change her name to Marilyn Monroe and start a new career as an actress?

5. When did she nab memorable roles in the films "The Asphalt Jungle" and "All About Eve"?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. Malcolm X



Malcolm X, 1965. (Credit: Michael Ochs Archives/Getty Images)

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Before he became famous for urging African Americans to win their rights “by any means necessary,” Malcolm X suffered through a tumultuous and often violent childhood. Born Malcolm Little in 1925, the future activist was visited by tragedy at age 6, when his father was killed in a Michigan streetcar accident that may have been engineered by local white supremacists. The Little family spent the next several years in dire poverty, and Malcolm bounced between foster care and juvenile homes after his mother suffered a psychological breakdown that saw her committed to a state mental hospital.

In 1941, 15-year-old Malcolm quit school and moved east to live with a half-sister. He later dabbled in drug dealing and petty crime, and in 1946 he was arrested for burglary and sentenced to prison. It was during his seven-year stint behind bars that he joined the Nation of Islam and adopted the moniker Malcolm X. Following his release in 1952, he embarked on the career that would see him become one of the United States’ most influential and controversial activists.

- 1) to strongly advise or try to persuade someone to do a particular thing;
- 2) very loud, or full of confusion, change, or uncertainty;
- 3) someone who believes that a particular type or group of people should lead or have control over other types or groups of people because they believe they are better;
- 4) the condition of being extremely poor;
- 5) used to refer to someone or something connected with the care of children, usually for a limited time, by someone who is not the child's legal parent;
- 6) relating to a young person who is not yet old enough to be considered an adult;
- 7) the crime of illegally entering a building and stealing things;
- 8) a fixed or limited period of time spent doing a particular job or activity;

9) a name or nickname;

10) an occasion when someone is allowed to leave prison, etc.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did Malcolm X suffer through before he became famous for urging African Americans to win their rights “by any means necessary”?

2. How old was Malcolm when his father was killed in a Michigan streetcar accident that may have been engineered by local white supremacists?

3. How did he spend his childhood?

4. What was Malcolm arrested and sentenced to prison for?

5. When did he join the Nation of Islam and adopt the moniker Malcolm X?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Зіркові сироти – знаменитості, які стали успішними всупереч усьому

<https://nash.live/news/lifestyle/zirkovi-siroti-10-istorij-znamenitostej-jaki-stali-uspishnimi-vsuperech-usomu.html>



Щорічно 30 вересня Україна відзначає День усиновлення. Цей день присвячений тисячам дітей, які знайшли люблячих батьків. Варто відзначити, що проблеми з усиновленням існують не тільки в Україні, а й в усьому світі. Хоч і кількість сімей, які бажають усиновити дитину зростає, але кількість покинутих дітей, на жаль, також не зменшується. У суспільстві склалася думка, що сироти та усиновлені діти не можуть досягти успіху в житті. Прийнято вважати, що успішна людина стала такою через свою удачу. Часто кажуть, що хтось досяг успіху, тому що «народився в сорочці». Насправді все зовсім не так.

В історії існує багато прикладів, коли люди заробляли мільйонні статки без допомоги рідних. Ці люди втратили найдорожче – батьків. Ось найвідоміші з них: легендарна жінка, якою захоплюється весь світ, зроста без батьків – Коко Шанель народилася у 1883 році. Вона була другою дитиною в сім'ї. Мама дівчинки померла ще під час пологів від астми, а батько не сильно турбувався про життя дітей і кинув їх, коли Коко було 11.

Найвідоміша і ключова фігура в комп'ютерній індустрії Стів Джобс також провів дитинство без рідних батьків. Його мати була незаміжня, і практично відразу після пологів віддала Стіва на усиновлення.

Варто відзначити, що горе-мати все ж подбала про майбутнє сина, і зажадала у прийомних батьків письмове зобов'язання оплатити хлопчикові навчання в коледжі.

Майбутня легенда боксу Майк Тайсон народився в Нью-Йорку в 1966 році. Свого батька хлопчик ніколи не знав, його сім'я складалася з мами, брата і сестри. Майк був складною дитиною, тому вже в підлітковому віці він потрапив у дитячу колонію. Саме туди, на бесіду з малолітніми правопорушниками приїхав відомий спортсмен Мохаммед Алі. Після спілкування з ним, Майк задумався про спортивну кар'єру.

Популярний співак 60-х Джон Леннон народився у Ліверпулі в 1940 році. Варто зазначити, що він не був круглим сиротою, оскільки все дитинство виховувався в родині своєї тітки. Що стосується батьків, то мати Джона відвідувала його, а батько з'явився в його житті тільки тоді, коли хлопець уже став популярним. Джулія Леннон трагічно загинула, коли хлопчикові було всього 18 років. Джон став успішною людиною, незважаючи на те, що був він дуже нещасним. У Джона були проблеми з психікою через те, що в дитинстві мати й тітка його постійно ділили, перетягуючи на свій бік.

Відомий актор Пірс Броснан народився в 1953 році в Ірландії. Коли хлопчикові виповнився 1 рік батько пішов із сім'ї і з'явився в житті сина після того, як Пірс став знаменитим. Мати хлопчика також не горіла бажанням виховувати дитину і поїхала до Лондона, де тривалий час працювала медсестрою. Пірса виховували бабуся і дідусь, проте незабаром їх не стало, і дитину відправили в сім'ю тітки і дядька. Оскільки родичі не захотіли опікуватися чужою дитиною, то віддали його до «Школи братів Христа». Відомо, що там Пірса часто били і карали.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. Born in 1755 (some sources say 1757) on the Caribbean island of Nevis, Hamilton was the illegitimate son of a who was still married to another man.

- a) Irish father and a French Huguenot mother
- b) Scottish father and a Dutch Huguenot mother
- c) German father and a French Huguenot mother
- d) Scottish father and a French Huguenot mother

2. His intellect impressed his managers, and in 1773 a group of local businessmen put up the money to send him to New York, where he studied at what would eventually become

- a) Boston University

- b) Columbia University
- c) Oxford University
- d) Massachusettes University

3. Despite having little formal education, Jackson later distinguished himself as a lawyer and politician before winning fame as a general during

- a) the War of 1812
- b) the War of 1822
- c) the War of 1832
- d) the War of 1842

4. Jackson never had any kids of his own, but before winning the White House in 1828, the former orphan served as the guardian to several different parentless children. He also adopted whose families had been killed during his military campaigns.

- a) two Native American girls
- b) three Native American girls
- c) two Native American boys
- d) three Native American boys

5. Simón Bolívar was born in 1783 into one of the most prosperous families in, yet his childhood was anything but idyllic.

- a) Spanish Venezuela
- b) Italian Venezuela
- c) German Venezuela
- d) American Venezuela

6. After returning to Venezuela in 1807, Simón Bolívar became a leading voice in the territory's fight for independence

- a) from Spain.
- b) from Italy.
- c) from Germany.
- d) from the US.

7. The sense of dread and despair that permeates much of Edgar Allan Poe's writing may have its roots in his

- a) severe upbringing.
- b) unhappy senior school years.
- c) necessity to work hard.
- d) unhappy childhood.

8. The author of "The Raven" and "The Tell-Tale Heart" was born in 1809 into a penniless family of traveling actors, and by his third birthday his father had left and his mother had died of

- a) chickenpox.
- b) tuberculosis.
- c) malaria.
- d) Pneumonia.

9. Ella Fitzgerald travelled a difficult path on her way to becoming America's

- a) "First Lady of Dance."
- b) "First Lady of Circus."
- c) "First Lady of Music."
- d) "First Lady of Song."

10. Ella Fitzgerald lived for a time on the streets of , dancing for spare change and sleeping in friends' homes, but she finally caught a break in 1934, when she won an amateur singing contest at the Apollo Theater.

- a) Harlem
- b) Bronx
- c) Manhattan
- d) Brooklyn

11. Long before she became Hollywood's most iconic blond bombshell, Marilyn Monroe was Norma Jeane Baker, the daughter of a single mother in

- a) New York.
- b) Los Angeles.
- c) Washington.
- d) Detroit.

12. Norma Jeane Baker proved to be natural in front of the camera, and by 1946 she had dyed her hair blond, changed her name to Marilyn Monroe and started a new career as

- a) an actress.
- b) an artist.
- c) a singer.
- d) an announcer.

13. Before he became famous for urging to win their rights "by any means necessary," Malcolm X suffered through a tumultuous and often violent childhood.

- a) Italian Americans
- b) Spanish Americans
- c) African Americans
- d) Indian Americans

14. In 1941, 15-year-old Malcolm quit school and moved east to live with a half-sister. He later dabbled in drug dealing and petty crime, and in 1946 he was arrested and sentenced to prison.

- a) for burglary
- b) for pickpocketing
- c) for smuggling
- d) for forgery

UNIT XIX

7 History's Great Romantics

<https://www.history.com/news/historys-great-romantics>

1. Sappho



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Much uncertainty surrounds the life story of the celebrated Greek lyric poet Sappho, a woman Plato called “the tenth Muse.” Born around 610 B.C. on the island of Lesbos, now part of Greece, she was said to have been married to Cercylas, a wealthy man. Many legends have long existed about Sappho’s life, including a prevalent one — now believed to be untrue — that she leaped into the sea to her death because of her unrequited love of a younger man, the sailor Phaon. It is not known how much work she published during her lifetime, but by the 8th or 9th century Sappho’s known work was limited to quotations made by other authors. In the majority of her poems, Sappho wrote about love — and the accompanying emotions of hatred, anger and jealousy — among the members of her largely young and female circle. Sappho gave her female acolytes educational and religious instruction as part of the preparation for marriage; the group was dedicated to and inspired by Aphrodite, the Greek goddess of love and beauty. Her focus on the relationships between women and girls has led many to assume that Sappho was a lesbian — a word derived from the island and the communities of women that lived there — but it is also true that the existence of strong emotions and attractions between members of the same sex was considered far more common and less taboo than in later years.

- 1) a person, or an imaginary being or force that gives someone ideas and helps them to write, paint, or make music;
- 2) to make a large jump or sudden movement;
- 3) (love) not felt in the same way by the other person;
- 4) a person who works on a ship, especially one who is not an officer;
- 5) a phrase or short piece of writing taken from a longer work of literature, poetry, etc. or what someone else has said;
- 6) an extremely strong feeling of dislike;
- 7) a strong feeling that makes you want to hurt someone or be unpleasant because of something unfair or unkind that has happened;

8) a feeling of unhappiness and anger because someone has something or someone that you want;

9) anyone who follows or helps another person, or someone who helps a priest in some religious ceremonies;

10) a subject, word, or action that is avoided for religious or social reasons.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How did Plato call the celebrated Greek lyric poet Sappho?

2. What legends about Sappho's life do you know?

3. Is it known how much work she published during her lifetime?

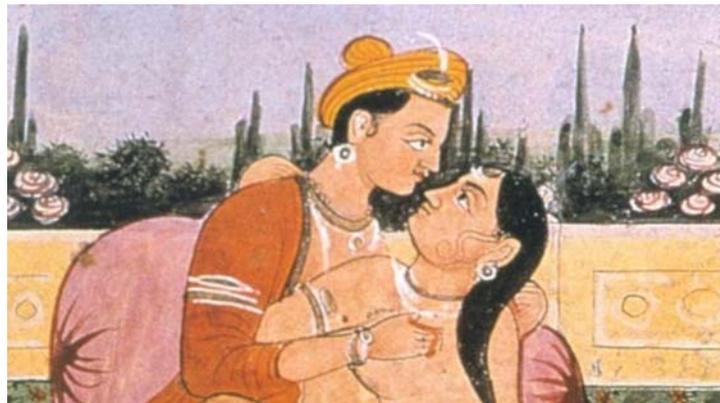
4. What did Sappho write about in the majority of her poems?

5. Who did Sappho give educational and religious instruction as part of the preparation for marriage to?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Vatsyayana, author of the Kama Sutra



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

This ascetic, probably celibate scholar who lived in classical India (around the 5th century A.D.) is an unlikely candidate to have written history's best known book on erotic love. Little is known about Vatsyayana's life, but in his famous book — actually a collection of notes on hundreds of years of spiritual wisdom passed down by the ancient sages — he wrote that he intended the Kama Sutra as the ultimate love manual and a tribute to Kama, the Indian god of love. Though it has become famous for its sections on sexual instruction, the book actually deals much more with the pursuit of fulfilling relationships, and provided a blueprint for courtship and marriage in upper-class Indian society at the time. In addition to his classic work on love, Vatsyayana also transcribed the Nyaya Sutras, an ancient philosophical text composed by Gautama in the 2nd century B.C. that examined questions of logic and epistemology. The Kama Sutra

has been translated into hundreds of languages and has won millions of devotees around the world.

- 1) avoiding physical pleasures and living a simple life, often for religious reasons;
- 2) not having sex, especially because you have made a religious promise not to;
- 3) a person, especially an old man, who is wise;
- 4) a book that gives you practical instructions on how to do something or how to use something;
- 5) something that you say, write, or give that shows your respect and admiration for someone, especially on a formal occasion;
- 6) an early plan or design that explains how something might be achieved;
- 7) the time when people have a romantic relationship with the intention of getting married;
- 8) a particular way of thinking, especially one that is reasonable and based on good judgment;
- 9) the part of philosophy that is about the study of how we know things;
- 10) a person who strongly admires a particular person or is extremely interested in a subject.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Do we know much about Vatsyayana's life?
2. Was Vatsyayana the ascetic, probably celibate scholar who lived in classical India around the 5th or the 6th century A.D.?
3. Did the book provide a blueprint for courtship and marriage in upper-class Indian society at the time?
4. Who also transcribed the Nyaya Sutras, an ancient philosophical text composed by Gautama in the 2nd century B.C.?
5. What did the Nyaya Sutras examine?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Shah Jahan



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Emperor of India from 1628 to 1658, Shah Jahan has gone down in history for commissioning one of history's most spectacular buildings, the Taj Mahal, in honor of his much beloved wife. Born Prince Khurram, the fifth son of the Emperor Jahangir of India, he became his father's favored son after leading several successful military campaigns to consolidate his family's empire. As a special honor, Jahangir gave him the title of Shah Jahan, or "King of the World." After his father's death in 1627, Shah Jahan won power after a struggle with his brothers, crowning himself emperor at Agra in 1628. At his side was Mumtaz Mahal, or "Chosen One of the Palace," Shah Jahan's wife since 1612 and the favorite of his three queens. In 1631, Mumtaz died after giving birth to the couple's 14th child. Legend has it that with her dying breaths, she asked her husband to promise to build the world's most beautiful mausoleum for her. Six months after her death, the deeply grieving emperor ordered construction to begin. Set across the Jamuna River from the royal palace in Agra, the white marble facade of the Taj Mahal reflects differing hues of light throughout the day, glowing pink at sunrise and pearly white in the moonlight. At its center, surrounded by delicate screens filtering light, lies the cenotaph, or coffin, containing the remains of the Shah's beloved queen.

- 1) very exciting to look at;
- 2) to become or make something stronger or more successful;
- 3) to put a crown on someone's head in an official ceremony that makes that person king or queen;
- 4) the air that you take into and let out of your lungs;
- 5) a long box in which the body of a dead person is buried or burned;
- 6) a building in which the bodies of dead people are buried;
- 7) a gradual dimming or increase in the brightness of a light source;
- 8) (a degree of lightness, darkness, strength, etc. of) a colour
- 9) a public monument (= special statue or building) built in memory of particular people who died in war, often with their names written on it;
- 10) someone's dead body or the remaining parts of it.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What has Emperor of India from 1628 to 1658, Shah Jahan gone down in history for?
2. When did Prince Khurram, the fifth son of the Emperor Jahangir of India, become his father's favored son?
3. Why did Jahangir give his son the title of Shah Jahan, or "King of the World?"
4. What did Mumtaz with her dying breaths ask her husband to promise to build according to the legend?
5. What does the white marble facade of the Taj Mahal reflect throughout the day?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Giacomo Casanova



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The name “Casanova” has long since come to conjure up the romantic image of the prototypical libertine and seducer, thanks to the success of Giacomo Casanova’s posthumously published 12-volume autobiography, *Histoire de ma vie*, which chronicled with vivid detail — as well as some exaggeration — his many sexual and romantic exploits in 18th-century Europe. Born in Venice in 1725 to actor parents, Casanova was expelled from a seminary for scandalous conduct and embarked on a varied career, including a stint working for a cardinal in Rome, as a violinist, and as a magician, while traveling all around the continent. Fleeing from creditors, he changed his name to Chevalier de Seingalt, under which he published a number of literary works, most importantly his autobiography. Casanova’s celebration of pleasure seeking and much-professed love of women — he maintained that a woman’s conversation was at least as captivating as her body — made him the leading champion of a movement towards sexual freedom, and the model for the famous Don Juan of literature. After working as a diplomat in Berlin, Russia, and Poland and a spy for the Venetian inquisitors, Casanova spent the final years of his life working on his autobiography in the library of a Bohemian count. He died in 1798.

- 1) to make a picture or idea appear in someone's mind;
- 2) a person, usually a man, who lives in a way that is not moral, having sexual relationships with many people;
- 3) a man who persuades someone to have sex with him;
- 4) happening, printed etc after someone’s death;
- 5) a book in which someone writes about his/her own life, or books of this type;
- 6) a priest of very high rank in the Roman Catholic Church
- 7) a person, organization, or government that is owed money;
- 8) holding your attention by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant, or attractive;

- 9) an official whose job is to represent one country in another, and who usually works in an embassy;
10) an official of the Inquisition.

II. Make sentences with these words.

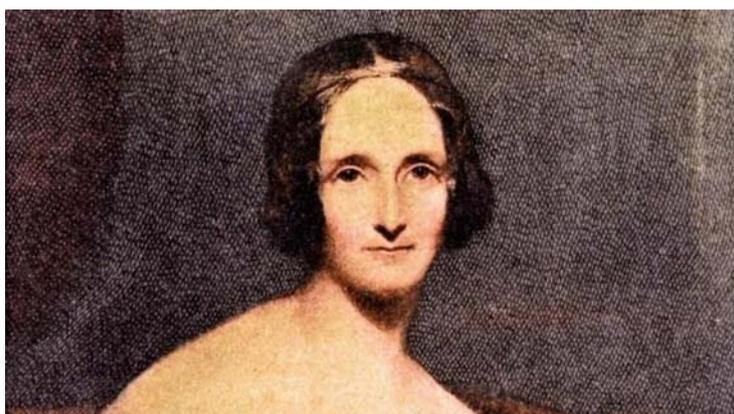
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What did Casanova's 12-volume autobiography, *Histoire de ma vie*, chronicle with vivid detail as well as some exaggeration?
2. Where and when was Casanova born?
3. Why was he expelled from a seminary?
4. Why did Casanova change his name to Chevalier de Seingalt?
5. How did Casanova spend the final years of his life?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Mary Wollstonecraft Shelley



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

The only child of the famous feminist Mary Wollstonecraft and the philosopher and novelist William Godwin, both influential voices in Romantic-Era England, Mary Wollstonecraft Godwin fell in love with the poet Percy Bysshe Shelley when she was only 16; he was 21 and unhappily married. In the summer of 1816, the couple was living with Shelley's friend and fellow poet, the dashing and scandalous Lord Byron, in Byron's villa in Switzerland when Mary came up with the idea for what would become her masterpiece — and one of the most famous novels in history — *Frankenstein* (1818). After Shelley's wife committed suicide, he and Mary were married, but public hostility to the match forced them to move to Italy. When Mary was only 24, Percy Shelley was caught in a storm while at sea and drowned, leaving her alone with a two-year-old son (three previous children had died young). Alongside her husband, Byron, and John Keats, Mary was one of the principal members of the second generation of

Romanticism; unlike the three poets, who all died during the 1820s, she lived long enough to see the dawn of a new era, the Victorian Age. Still somewhat of a social outcast for her liaison with Shelley, she worked as a writer to support her father and son, and maintained connections to the artistic, literary and political circles of London until her death in 1851.

- 1) someone who supports the idea that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men;
- 2) a person who writes novels;
- 3) attractive in a confident, exciting, and stylish way;
- 4) making people shocked and upset;
- 5) an occasion when someone is unfriendly or shows that they do not like something;
- 6) to (cause to) die by being unable to breathe underwater;
- 7) a group of people in society who are born and live around the same time;
- 8) the start of a period of time or the beginning of something new;
- 9) a person who has no place in their society or in a particular group, because the society or group refuses to accept them;
- 10) a secret sexual relationship between a man and a woman, especially a man and a woman who are married but not to each other.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. At what age did Mary Wollstonecraft Godwin fall in love with the poet Percy Bysshe Shelley?
2. Who was the couple living with in the summer of 1816?
3. Where did Mary come up with the idea for what would become her masterpiece — and one of the most famous novels in history — Frankenstein ?
4. What forced Mary and her husband move to Italy?
5. What happened when Mary was only 24?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. Richard Wagner



Credit: DEA / A. DAGLI ORTI/De Agostini/Getty Images

I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

One of history's most revered composers, Richard Wagner set his work on the famous Ring cycle aside in 1858 to work on his most romantic opera, Tristan and Isolde. He was inspired to do so partially because of his thwarted passion for Mathilde Wesendonck, the wife of a wealthy silk merchant and patron of Wagner's. While at work on the opera, the unhappily married Wagner met Cosima von Bulow, daughter of the celebrated pianist and composer Franz Liszt and wife of Hans von Bulow, one of Liszt's disciples. They later became lovers, and their relationship was an open secret in the music world for several years. Wagner's wife died in 1866, but Cosima was still married and the mother of two children with von Bulow, who knew of the relationship and worshiped Wagner's music (he even conducted the premiere of Tristan and Isolde). After having two daughters, Isolde and Eva, by Wagner, Cosima finally left her husband; she and Wagner married and settled into an idyllic villa in Switzerland, near Lucerne. On Cosima's 33rd birthday, Christmas Day 1870, Wagner brought an orchestra in to play a symphony he had written for her, named the Triebtschen Idyll after their villa. Though the music was later renamed the Siegfried Idyll after the couple's son, the supremely romantic gesture was a powerful symbol of the strength of Wagner and Cosima's marriage, which lasted until the composer's death in 1883.

- 1) having a lot of respect and admiration;
- 2) preventing someone from doing something that they want to do;
- 3) someone who supports the work of writers, artists, musicians etc, especially by giving them money;
- 4) someone who admires a famous person and is influenced by him/her;
- 5) to love, respect, and admire someone or something very much, often without noticing the bad qualities of that person or thing;
- 6) to direct the performance of musicians or a piece of music;
- 7) the first public performance of a play or any other type of entertainment;
- 8) a long piece of music for an orchestra, usually with four movements (= parts);
- 9) an action that expresses your feelings or intentions, although it might have little practical effect;
- 10) someone or something that represents a particular idea or quality.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Why did one of history's most revered composers, Richard Wagner set his work on the famous Ring cycle aside in 1858?
2. Who was he inspired to do so by?
3. Was Wagner unhappily married?
4. What was the relationship between Wagner and Cosima von Bulow?
5. When did Cosima finally leave her husband?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. King Edward VIII



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Edward, then Prince of Wales, was introduced to Wallis Simpson in 1931, when she was married to her second husband; they soon began a relationship that would rock Britain's most prominent institutions — Parliament, the monarchy and the Church of England — to their cores. Edward called Simpson, whom others criticized as a financially unstable social climber, "the perfect woman." Just months after being crowned king in January 1936, after the death of his father, George V, Edward proposed to Simpson, precipitating a huge scandal and prompting Britain's prime minister, Stanley Baldwin, to say he would resign if the marriage went ahead. Not wanting to push his country into an electoral crisis, but unwilling to give Simpson up, Edward made the decision to abdicate the throne. In a public radio address, he told the world of his love for Simpson, saying that "I have found it impossible to carry the heavy burden of responsibility and to discharge my duties as King as I would wish to do without the help and support of the woman I love." Married and given the titles of Duke and Duchess of Windsor, the couple lived in exile in France, where they became fixtures of cafe society.

- 1) to cause feelings of shock;
- 2) very well known and important;
- 3) the basic and most important part of something;
- 4) climber - a person who tries to advance socially or in business;
- 5) to make something happen suddenly or sooner than expected;
- 6) (an action or event that causes) a public feeling of shock and strong moral disapproval;
- 7) to give up a job or position;
- 8) to make a formal statement that he or she no longer wants to be king or queen;
- 9) the act of asking or allowing someone to leave a place, esp. a job;
- 10) always seem to be there.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When was Edward, then Prince of Wales, introduced to Wallis Simpson?
 2. How did Edward call Simpson?
 3. Why did Edward make the decision to abdicate the throne?
 4. What did Edward tell the world of his love for Simpson in a public radio address?
 5. What titles were Edward and Simpson given after marriage?
- ## IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.
- ## V. Describe the photo.
- ## VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Оноре де Бальзак і Евеліна Ганська

<https://inlviv.in.ua/suspilstvo/statti/nayromantichnishi-istoriyi-kohannya-v-ukrayini>



Романтична історія кохання відомого французького письменника Оноре де Бальзака та Евеліни Ганської розпочалася з листування. Перший лист жінка надіслала французькому письменнику 28 лютого 1832 року. Одружена Ганська тримала у таємниці цей «поштовий роман». Він тривав 10 років. Та навіть тоді, коли чоловік Евеліни помер, закохані не могли довгий час повінчатися. Дозвіл на це мав дати сам цар Микола I. Крім того, для втілення у життя мрії про одруження з Бальзаком, Евеліні потрібно було віддати більшу частину своїх статків. Такою була царська умова. Пара побралася у Бердичеві, у костелі Святої Варвари. До слова, у склепі храму похована дочка подружжя Бальзаків, яка народилася мертво. Подружжя жило у палаці Ганських, нині – це музей, присвячений Бальзаку. Знаходиться будівля в селі Верхівня.

Щасливі, натхненні та успішні три роки свого життя французький письменник Оноре де Бальзак провів у селі на Житомирщині. Там він жив у палаці, який називав Лувром, де йому сяяла «північна зоря» Евеліна Ганська.

Мальовнича і тиха місцина оповита романтичною історією графині, яка крадькома від чоловіка 17 років листувалася з письменником, котрий причарував її своїми творами. Тільки уявіть, як складно було чекати

відповіді у XIX столітті, коли не було ні тобі соціальних мереж, ні експрес-доставки листів. Палка любов, загартована часом і відстанню, зрештою переросла у шлюб, але тривав він лише 5 місяців.

Верхівня приваблює туристів не тільки розповідями про Бальзака та Ганську, а й красою маєтку, що досі зберігає свою величну автентичність. Утім дороги, що ведуть до палацу, стримують багатьох охочих туди потрапити. Автошляхам ще далеко до туристичної привабливості, але хитаючись в автобусі, що підстрибує на ямах та вибоїнах, можна собі уявити, як Оноре де Бальзак їхав до коханої каретою десь 200 років тому. Вочевидь, тодішній стан доріг був десь такий самий.

На жаль, не судилося подружній парі прожити довго. Оноре де Бальзак помер за 5 місяців після весілля у Парижі. Опісля Евеліна Ганська завдяки іншим літераторам закінчила деякі твори чоловіка й опублікувала їх.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Choose the correct variant a, b, c, or d.

1. Much uncertainty surrounds the life story of the celebrated Greek lyric poet Sappho, a woman Plato called

- a) "the tenth Muse."
- b) "the sixth Muse."
- c) "the third Muse."
- d) "the first Muse."

2. Many legends have long existed about Sappho's life, including a prevalent one — now believed to be untrue — that she leaped into the sea to her death because of her unrequited love of a younger man,

- a) the musician Phaon.
- b) the pirate Phaon.
- c) the soldier Phaon.
- d) the sailor Phaon.

3. This ascetic, probably celibate scholar who lived (around the 5th century A.D.) is an unlikely candidate to have written history's best known book on erotic love.

- a) in classical China
- b) in classical India
- c) in classical Italy
- d) in classical Greece

4. In addition to his classic, Vatsyayana also transcribed the Nyaya Sutras, an ancient philosophical text composed by Gautama in the 2nd century B.C.

- a) work on history

- b) work on mathematics
- c) work on love
- d) work on astronomy

5. Emperor of India from 1628 to 1658, Shah Jahan has gone down in history for commissioning one of history's , the Taj Mahal, in honor of his much beloved wife.

- a) most famous opera
- b) most spectacular buildings
- c) most spectacular statue
- d) most famous portraits

6. As a special honor, Jahangir gave his son the title of Shah Jahan, or

- a) "King of the Paradise."
- b) "King of the Sea."
- c) "King of the Universe."
- d) "King of the World."

7. The name "Casanova" has long since come to conjure up the romantic image of the prototypical libertine and seducer, thanks to the success of Giacomo Casanova's posthumously published

- a) 12-volume autobiography
- b) 12-volume encyclopedia
- c) 12-volume world history
- d) 12-volume dictionary

8. After working in Berlin, Russia, and Poland and a spy for the Venetian inquisitors, Casanova spent the final years of his life working in the library of a Bohemian count.

- a) as a lecturer
- b) as a scholar
- c) as a diplomat
- d) as a judge

9. The only child of the famous feminist Mary Wollstonecraft and the philosopher and novelist William Godwin, both influential voices in Romantic-Era England, Mary Wollstonecraft Godwin fell in love with the poet Percy Bysshe Shelley when she was only

- a) 14
- b) 15
- c) 16
- d) 17

10. After Shelley's wife committed suicide, he and Mary were married, but public hostility to the match forced them to move to

- a) Italy
- b) Germany
- c) Greece
- d) China

11. One of history's most revered composers, Richard Wagner set his work on the famous Ring cycle aside in 1858 to work on his most romantic opera,

- a) The Ring of the Nibelung
- b) Tristan and Isolde
- c) Parsifal
- d) The Flying Dutchman

12. While at work on the opera, the unhappily married Wagner met Cosima von Bulow, of the celebrated pianist and composer Franz Liszt and wife of Hans von Bulow, one of Liszt's disciples.

- a) granddaughter
- b) daughter
- c) sister
- d) cousin

13. Edward, then Prince of Wales, called Wallis Simpson whom others criticized as a financially unstable social climber,

- a) "the perfect girl."
- b) "the perfect woman."
- c) "the perfect friend."
- d) "the perfect wife."

14. Not wanting to push his country into an electoral crisis, but unwilling to give Simpson up, Edward made the decision

- a) to abdicate the throne
- b) to become an MP
- c) to start a new career
- d) to ascend the throne

UNIT XX

7 Presidential War Stories

<https://www.history.com/news/7-presidential-war-stories>

1. James Monroe



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Long before he served as the fifth president, a young James Monroe fought in the Revolutionary War as an officer in the Continental Army. On Christmas Day 1776, he joined in the famous crossing of the icy Delaware River as part of General George Washington's surprise attack on a garrison of 1,400 Hessians stationed in Trenton, New Jersey. Lieutenant Monroe was one of the first Americans to make landfall. When the fighting began, he helped lead an assault on a pair of cannons the Hessians were scrambling to aim at the advancing patriots. Monroe was shot through the shoulder by a musket ball during the skirmish, but he and his men continued fighting and held off the enemy until reinforcements arrived and put the Hessians to a rout. Monroe's wound was grave—the bullet had severed an artery—and he nearly bled to death before being treated by a volunteer physician. Artist Emanuel Leutze would later depict the future president holding the American flag in his famous painting "Washington Crossing the Delaware."

- 1) a person in the armed forces who has a position of authority;
- 2) a journey across a large area of water, from one side to the other;
- 3) to cause especially soldiers to be in a particular place to do a job;
- 4) a situation in which someone or something reaches land after being at sea;
- 5) a large, powerful gun, usually attached to two or four wheels, that was used in the past to fire heavy stone or metal balls
- 6) a fight between a small number of soldiers that is usually short and not planned, and happens away from the main area of fighting in a war;
- 7) defeat;
- 8) one of the thick tubes that carry blood from the heart to other parts of the body;

9) used to describe someone who works without expecting payment, or the work they do;

10) to represent or show something in a picture, story, movie, etc.; portray.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who fought in the Revolutionary War as an officer in the Continental Army long before becoming the fifth president?

2. When did he join in the famous crossing of the icy Delaware River as part of General George Washington's surprise attack on a garrison of 1,400 Hessians stationed in Trenton, New Jersey?

3. Was Lieutenant Monroe one of the first Americans to make landfall?

4. When was Monroe shot through the shoulder by a musket ball?

5. Who depicted the future president holding the American flag in the famous painting "Washington Crossing the Delaware?"

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

2. Andrew Jackson



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Andrew Jackson's first war service came at the tender age of 13, when he served with a group of patriot guerillas in the Carolinas during the Revolutionary War. Following one engagement in 1781, he and his brother Robert were surrounded and taken prisoner by the British while hiding in a neighbor's home. As the soldiers ransacked the house, one of the officers seized Jackson and demanded that the boy polish his mud-caked boots. Jackson refused, supposedly announcing, "Sir, I am a prisoner of war, and claim to be treated as such." Furious, the officer slashed at Jackson with his sword. The boy managed to block the blow with his hand, but still suffered several wounds. "The sword point reached my head and has left a mark there...as well as on the fingers," he later recalled. The Jackson brothers were marched 40 miles to a prison camp, where they both contracted smallpox, which proved fatal for

Robert. Jackson also lost his mother and another brother during the Revolution, and ended the war an orphan. He would nevertheless go on to become a successful lawyer and politician, and later served as a general during the War of 1812, when he famously crushed an advancing British army at 1815's Battle of New Orleans.

- 1) a member of an unofficial military group that is trying to change the government by making sudden, unexpected attacks on the official army forces;
- 2) to be around something on all sides;
- 3) a person who is kept in prison as a punishment;
- 4) to search a place or container in a violent and careless way;
- 5) to cut with a sharp blade using a quick, strong movement;
- 6) a weapon with a long, sharp metal blade and a handle, used especially in the past
- 7) an extremely infectious disease that causes a fever, spots on the skin, and often death;
- 8) a child whose parents are dead;
- 9) someone whose job is to give advice to people about the law and speak for them in court;
- 10) an officer of very high rank, especially in the army.

II. Make sentences with these words.

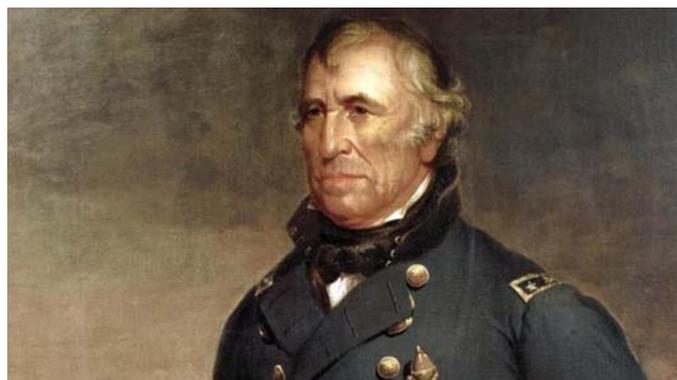
III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. At what age did Andrew Jackson's first war service come?
2. Where did he serve with a group of patriot guerillas during the Revolutionary War?
3. What did the boy announce when one of the officers seized him and demanded to polish his mud-caked boots?
4. How many relatives did Jackson lose during the Revolution?
5. Did he become a successful lawyer and politician?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

3. Zachary Taylor



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

Zachary Taylor won the presidency after leading U.S. troops in the Mexican-American War, but it was during the War of 1812 that he first won fame as a soldier. In September 1812, Captain Taylor was commanding a 55-man garrison at Indiana's Fort Harrison when it was attacked by some 450 Native Americans allied with the British. The natives set the fort's blockhouses on fire, and the blaze quickly spread after it ignited the whiskey supply. Taylor later wrote that his citadel descended into chaos amidst, "the raging of the fire—the yelling and howling of several hundred Indians—and the cries of nine women and children." As the natives poured against Fort Harrison's outer walls, Taylor mounted a frantic defense. After ordering the majority of his forces to return fire with muskets, he instructed a few others to tear shingles off the roof and use well water to snuff out the blaze. Taylor and his men then built breastworks to plug the burned out gap in their wall. The makeshift defenses managed to hold off the attack until daybreak, and Taylor and his beleaguered garrison later survived a 10-day siege before being relieved by U.S. reinforcements.

1) the state of being known or recognized by many people because of your achievements, skills, etc.

2) a group of soldiers living in or defending a town or building, or the buildings that the soldiers live in;

3) a military building designed to be defended from attack, consisting of an area surrounded by a strong wall, in which soldiers are based;

4) a strong, pale brown alcoholic drink, originally from Scotland and Ireland, made from grain such as barley, corn, or rye;

5) a strong castle in or near a city, where people can shelter from danger, especially during a war;

6) a thin, flat tile made of wood, slate, etc. that is fixed in rows to make a roof or wall covering;

7) temporary and of low quality, but used because of a sudden need;

8) surrounded by an army;

9) the surrounding of a place by an armed force in order to defeat those defending it;

10) soldiers sent to join an army to make it stronger.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. When did Zachary Taylor win the presidency?

2. When did he first win fame as a soldier?

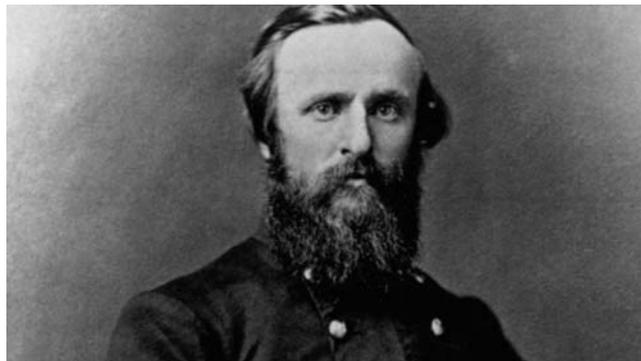
3. Who was commanding a 55-man garrison at Indiana's Fort Harrison when it was attacked by some 450 Native Americans allied with the British in September 1812?

4. What did Captain Taylor do after ordering the majority of his forces to return fire with muskets? 5. Did Taylor and his beleaguered garrison survive a 15-day siege before being relieved by U.S. reinforcements?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

4. Rutherford B. Hayes



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

On September 14, 1862, the man who would become the 19th president was serving as a Union lieutenant colonel during heavy fighting at the Battle of South Mountain. When Rutherford B. Hayes led his men on a frontal assault against Confederate forces, he was suddenly struck by a musket ball that shattered the humerus of his left arm. Hayes continued to lead for a few moments before collapsing. While he writhed in agony, his company momentarily fell back, leaving the wounded Hayes stranded in the no man's land between the two armies. As he lay bleeding on the field, Hayes spoke with a wounded Confederate soldier, and even gave the man messages to deliver to his wife and friends in the event he did not survive. After the firing died down, one of Hayes' soldiers dragged him from the field and, as he later wrote, "laid me down behind a big log and gave me a canteen of water, which tasted so good." Hayes almost lost his arm to the musket ball, but it wasn't the only time the future president was wounded during the Civil War. Before ending the conflict as a major general, Hayes would suffer four separate injuries and have four horses shot out from under him.

- 1) (the title of) an officer of middle rank in the armed forces;
- 2) an officer of high rank in the army or air force;
- 3) someone who fought for or supported the Confederacy in the American Civil War;
- 4) a gun with a long barrel, used in the past;
- 5) to suddenly fall down and become very ill or unconscious;
- 6) extreme physical or mental pain or suffering;

7) to continue to live or exist, especially after coming close to dying or being destroyed or after being in a difficult or threatening situation;

8) a thick piece of tree trunk or branch, especially one cut for burning on a fire;

9) a small container for carrying water or another drink, used especially by soldiers or travelers;

10) physical harm or damage to someone's body caused by an accident or an attack.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was serving as a Union lieutenant colonel during heavy fighting at the Battle of South Mountain on September 14, 1862?

2. What happened when Rutherford B. Hayes led his men on a frontal assault against Confederate forces?

3. Did his company leave the wounded Hayes stranded in the no man's land between the two armies?

4. Who dragged him from the field after the firing had died down?

5. Was it the only time the future president was wounded during the Civil War?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

5. Teddy Roosevelt



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

America's 26th president had a lifelong love affair with the military, but he didn't get a chance to see combat until he was 40 years old. Theodore Roosevelt was serving as Assistant Secretary of the Navy when the Spanish-American War broke out, and he promptly resigned his post and organized his own volunteer

cavalry unit known as the Rough Riders. On July 1, 1898, the unit fought alongside black Buffalo Soldiers and other U.S. troops in the Battle of San Juan Hill, a frontal assault on an entrenched Spanish position on the heights near Santiago, Cuba. Roosevelt launched himself into the fight with relish, successfully leading his men up a ridge known as Kettle Hill before storming the main objective at San Juan Hill. Despite the bullets whizzing past him and the scores of men falling wounded, the future president was in his element. He later described the battle as “great fun,” and put on a reckless display of bravery by charging so far ahead of his column that he briefly found himself in no man’s land with almost no backup. Roosevelt—who called the battle “the great day of my life”—was recommended for the Medal of Honor for his gallantry, but the Army passed him over. President Bill Clinton posthumously gave him the award in 2001, making Roosevelt the only U.S. president to have received the nation’s highest military honor.

- 1) a fight, especially during a war;
- 2) the part of a country's armed forces that is trained to operate at sea;
- 3) to give up a job or position;
- 4) the group of soldiers in an army who fight in tanks, or (especially in the past) on horses;
- 5) soldiers on duty in a large group;
- 6) a violent attack;
- 7) a small, metal object that is shot from a gun;
- 8) to damage an area of the body, especially by making a cut or hole in the skin;
- 9) (someone or something that provides) support or help, or something that you have arranged in case your main plans, equipment, etc. go wrong;
- 10) the quality of being brave when something is difficult or dangerous.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What was Theodore Roosevelt doing when the Spanish-American War broke out?
2. Why did he promptly resign his post?
3. Did Roosevelt organize his own volunteer cavalry unit known as the Rough Riders?
4. Did Roosevelt launch himself into the fight with relish, successfully leading his men up a ridge known as Kettle Hill before storming the main objective at San Juan Hill?
5. Who gave Roosevelt the award in 2001, making him the only U.S. president to have received the nation’s highest military honor?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

6. John F. Kennedy



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

During World War II, the man who would later reign over “Camelot” commanded PT-109, a small torpedo boat in the Pacific. On the night of August 2, 1943, PT-109 was silently stalking enemy warships near the Solomon Islands when it was accidentally rammed and cut in two by the Japanese destroyer “Amagiri.” Two of Kennedy’s 12 crewmen were killed in the collision, and several others were injured. The survivors clung to the shattered hull of their ship for 11 hours, but when it began to sink, they had to swim for an uninhabited island four miles away. Kennedy—a former competitive swimmer at Harvard—led the way, often towing the injured behind him by gripping a life jacket strap with his teeth. The men reached the island after five grueling hours, only to find themselves stranded with no supplies. They survived on coconuts for nearly a week, and Kennedy made several daring solo swims to try and signal nearby ships. Two native islanders finally discovered the haggard crewmen, and brought help after Kennedy gave them a coconut husk with a rescue message carved into it. All eleven men survived the ordeal, and Kennedy was later presented with the Navy and Marine Corps medal for his heroism.

- 1) to follow an animal or person as closely as possible without being seen or heard, usually in order to catch or kill them;
- 2) a ship supplied with guns, for use in war;
- 3) to hit or push something with force;
- 4) a small fast military ship;
- 5) an accident that happens when two vehicles hit each other with force;
- 6) the body of an old ship, car, or very large piece of equipment that is broken and no longer used;
- 7) extremely tiring and difficult, and demanding great effort and determination;
- 8) looking ill or tired, often with dark skin under the eyes;
- 9) the dry outer covering of some seeds;
- 10) a very unpleasant and painful or difficult experience.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Who was the man who reigned over “Camelot” and commanded PT-109, a small torpedo boat in the Pacific During World War II?
2. Was PT-109 accidentally rammed and cut in two by the Japanese destroyer “Amagiri” near the Solomon Islands on the night of August 2, 1943?
3. How long did the survivors cling to the shattered hulk of their ship?
4. Who finally discovered the haggard crewmen, and brought help after Kennedy gave them a coconut husk with a rescue message carved into it?
5. What was Kennedy later presented with the Navy and Marine Corps medal for?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

7. George H.W. Bush



I. Read the text. Match the words from the text with the definitions below.

President George H.W. Bush flew 58 attack missions as a torpedo bomber pilot in the Pacific theatre of World War II, and at age 19, was briefly the youngest aviator in the Navy. On September 2, 1944, he and two crewmen strapped into a TBM Avenger and set off to bomb a radio station on the Japanese held island of Chi Chi Jima. As Bush and his squadron mates neared their target, they found themselves enveloped in dense anti-aircraft fire. Bush's plane was struck by flak and set ablaze, but he managed to drop his bombs and steer his plane away from the island before bailing out over the open ocean. The future president parachuted into the water and safely deployed a life raft, but his crewmen—radioman John Delaney and gunner William White—were both killed. Bush would spend four hours floating helplessly in his raft, and was nearly intercepted by a Japanese boat until a fellow Avenger pilot strafed the vessel and drove it away. With the help of circling American aircraft, he was eventually rescued by the U.S. submarine “Finback” and ferried to Midway. Bush was later awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross for his courage under fire.

1) a long, thin bomb that travels underwater in order to destroy the ship at which it is aimed;

- 2) a person who flies an aircraft;
- 3) a member of a group of people who work together, especially on a ship;
- 4) a unit of one of the armed forces, especially (in Britain) the air force or the navy;
- 5) an object shot at during shooting practice, often a circle with a pattern of rings, or any object or place at which bullets, bombs, etc. are aimed;
- 6) the firing of guns from the ground at enemy aircraft, or the bullets, etc. that the guns fire;
- 7) to jump out of an aircraft with a parachute because the aircraft is going to have an accident;
- 8) a small rubber or plastic boat that can be filled with air;
- 9) a large boat or a ship;
- 10) a ship that can travel underwater.

II. Make sentences with these words.

III. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How many attack missions as a torpedo bomber pilot in the Pacific theatre of World War II did President George H.W. Bush fly?
2. What happened on September 2, 1944?
3. What was Bush's plane struck by?
4. Was Bush eventually rescued by the U.S. submarine "Finback" and ferried to Midway?
5. What was Bush awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross for?

IV. Translate the text into Ukrainian.

V. Describe the photo.

VI. Read the text and convey its main content in English.

Президент США Ліндон Джонсон

<https://ru.osvita.ua/vnz/reports/biograf/24056/>



В опитуваннях суспільної думки про діяльності й особистість президентів, починаючи з Франкліна Д. Рузвельта, Ліндон Б. Джонсон постійно займає одне з останніх місць. Більшість американців вважають 36-го президента одержимим владою і хитрим опортуністом, який

намагався домінувати і маніпулювати і вплатив країну в єдину війну, яку Сполучені Штати програли.

Травматичні події затьмарили його президентство, що почалися з насильницької смерті Джона Ф. Кеннеді і які супроводжувалися студентським безладом і важкими расовими заворушеннями. Воно закінчилося вбивством афро-американського борця за цивільні права і лауреата премії світу Мартіна Лютера Кінга і Роберта Ф. Кеннеді, що був надією молодого покоління.

Далека війна в джунглях перекреслила обіцянку світу волі і добробуту, дану Джонсоном, - В'єтнам став «Немезидою Америки», а президент – зрадником «американської мрії». Майже цілком забуті його соціально-законодавчі досягнення і заслуги в області цивільних прав.

Ліндон Бейнс Джонсон народився 27 серпня 1908 року неподалік від Стоунуолла, Техас, рівно 100 кілометрів на захід від Остіна. Його батько, Семюел Джонсон молодший, був фермером, маклером, пізніше працював на залізниці, потім тимчасово – депутатом демократичної партії в Палаті Представників Техаса. Мати Ребекка Бейнс після заміжжя залишила професію журналістки. Ліндон Джонсон, його три молодші сестри і брат не росли в бідності, як потім він любляв постійно згадувати.

Джонсон намагався політично захистити свою спадщину, підтримавши висунання свого віце-президента Хьюберта Хемфрі, який після смерті Роберта Кеннеді хотів обійняти посаду президента. За п'ять днів до президентських виборів 30 жовтня 1968 р. Джонсон оголосив про початок мирних переговорів з Північним В'єтнамом. Цим він хотів залучити до Хемфрі численних виборців, але для перемоги демократів на виборах цього вже було замало.

Джонсон і його популярна дружина «леді птах», що в успішні роки «великого суспільства» також енергійно виступала за поліпшення умов життя бідних американців, повернулися у січні 1969 року на своє ранчо в Техасі. Фізично втомлений, без ілюзій і психічно надламаний, Джонсон майже не з'являвся на політичній сцені аж до самої смерті 22 січня 1973 року. В останні роки свого життя він піклувався про дітей своїх обох дочок, складав мемуари і займався будівництвом бібліотеки ім. Ліндона Б. Джонсона в Остіні.

Історичні описи намагаються зараз справедливо оцінити його особистість і справи його життя. Як соціальний реформатор Ліндон Б. Джонсон поряд з Авраамом Лінкольном і Франкліном Д. Рузвельтом належить до великих президентів Сполучених Штатів. Однак людина, що майже двадцять років як сенатор, віце-президент і президент значною мірою формувала долю своєї країни, назавжди залишиться нелюбимою фігурою. Його ім'я залишиться нерозривно пов'язаним з американською катастрофою у В'єтнамі.

Як і в'єтнамська війна, Джонсон був довгий час витиснутий з колективної пам'яті Америки, і навіть його заслуги зазнавали критики в консервативній Америці 1970-х – 80-х років.

VII. Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

COMPREHENSION TEST

Make a presentation based on the information which you find the most interesting.

1. Long before he served as the fifth president, a young James Monroe fought in the Revolutionary War as an officer in the Continental Army. On Christmas Day 1776, he joined in the famous crossing of the icy Delaware River as part of surprise attack on a garrison of 1,400 Hessians stationed in Trenton, New Jersey.

- a) General Benjamin Lincoln's
- b) General Artemas Ward's
- c) General Richard Montgomery's
- d) General George Washington's

2. Monroe was shot by a musket ball during the skirmish, but he and his men continued fighting and held off the enemy until reinforcements arrived and put the Hessians to a rout.

- a) through the leg
- b) through the shoulder
- c) through the arm
- d) through the thigh

3. The Jackson brothers were marched 40 miles to a prison camp, where they both contracted, which proved fatal for Robert.

- a) smallpox
- b) malaria
- c) plague
- d) typhus

4. Jackson also lost his mother and another brother during the Revolution, and ended the war an orphan. He would nevertheless go on to become a successful lawyer and politician, and later served as a general during the War of 1812, when he famously crushed an advancing British army at 1815's

- a) Battle of Lundy's Lane
- b) Battles of Stoney Creek and Beaver Dams
- c) Battle of Queenston Heights
- d) Battle of New Orleans

5. Zachary Taylor won the presidency after leading U.S. troops in the Mexican-American War, but it was during that he first won fame as a soldier.

- a) the War of 1812
- b) the War of 1822
- c) the War of 1814
- d) the War of 1810

6. In, Captain Taylor was commanding a 55-man garrison at Indiana's Fort Harrison when it was attacked by some 450 Native Americans allied with the British.

- a) September 1812
- b) September 1822
- c) September 1814
- d) September 1810

7. On September 14, 1862, the man who would become the 19th president was serving as a Union lieutenant colonel during heavy fighting at the

- a) Battle of Glorietta Pas
- b) Battle of Shiloh
- c) Battle of Yorktown
- d) Battle of South Mountain

8. Before ending the conflict as a major general, Hayes would sufferseparate injuries and have horses shot out from under him.

- a) two
- b) three
- c) four
- d) five

9. America's 26th president had a lifelong love affair with the military, but he didn't get a chance to see combat until he was

- a) 45 years old.
- b) 40 years old.
- c) 35 years old.
- d) 30 years old.

10. President Bill Clinton posthumously gave him the award in 2001, making Roosevelt the only U.S. president to have received the nation's highest military honor.

- a) President Bill Clinton
- b) President Ronald Reagan
- c) President George H. W. Bush
- d) President Jimmy Carter

11. During World War II, the man who would later reign over "Camelot" commanded PT-109, a small torpedo boat in

- a)the Atlantic
- b)the Indian
- c) the Pacific
- d)the Arctic

12. On the night of August 2, 1943, PT-109 was silently stalking enemy warships near the Solomon Islands when it was accidentally rammed and cut in two by "Amagiri."

- a) the Japanese destroyer
- b) the Chinese destroyer
- c) the German destroyer
- d) the Russian destroyer

13. flew 58 attack missions as a torpedo bomber pilot in the Pacific theatre of World War II, and at age 19, was briefly the youngest aviator in the Navy.

- a) President Bill Clinton
- b) President Ronald Reagan
- c) President George H. W. Bush
- d) President Jimmy Carter

14. was later awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross for his courage under fire.

- a) Bill Clinton
- b) Ronald Reagan
- c) George H. W. Bush
- d) Jimmy Carter

SOURCE MATERIAL

<https://www.history.com/news/5-famous-pyrrhic-victories>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-brilliant-military-retreats>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-unusual-military-units>
<https://www.history.com/news/8-legendary-battle-cries>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-brutal-sieges>
<https://www.history.com/news/6-wars-fought-for-ridiculous-reasons>
<https://www.history.com/news/6-unusual-riots>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-failed-predictions-from-history>
<https://www.history.com/news/8-early-american-political-scandals>
<https://www.history.com/news/8-astonishing-ancient-sites-in-the-americas>
https://www.history.com/news/8-mysterious-underground-cities?li_source=LI&li_medium=m2m-rcw-history
<https://www.history.com/news/8-impressive-ancient-libraries>
<https://www.history.com/news/8-remarkable-early-maps>
<https://www.history.com/news/8-notable-lotteries-from-history>
<https://www.history.com/news/6-historical-figures-who-may-or-may-not-have-existed>
https://www.history.com/news/6-child-monarchs-who-changed-history?li_source=LI&li_medium=m2m-rcw-history
<https://www.history.com/news/7-people-who-pretended-to-be-royals>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-historical-figures-who-grew-up-as-orphans>
<https://www.history.com/news/historys-great-romantics>
<https://www.history.com/news/7-presidential-war-stories>
<https://www.macmillandictionary.com>
Ошибка! Недопустимый объект гиперссылки.
<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english>
<https://www.ldoceonline.com/>
<https://www.merriam-webster.com>
<https://www.oed.com>

Навчально-методичне видання

Мишко С.А., Андрейко В.І., Мишко А.В.
НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК
З АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ ЗА ПРОФЕСІЙНИМ СПРЯМУВАННЯМ

**для студентів спеціальностей «Історія та археологія» та
«Міжнародні відносини, суспільні комунікації та регіональні студії»**

Редактор Іван Ребрик

Художньо-технічна редакція Томаша Лелекача

Підписано до друку 05.03.2021. Формат 60x84/16.
Гарнітура Cambria. Папір офсетний. Облік.-вид. арк. 14,8.
Замовлення 33.

Видавництво «Гражда»

Свідоцтво про державну реєстрацію видавців, виготівників і
розповсюджувачів видавничої продукції.

Серія 3т № 22 від 1 вересня 2005 р.

88000, м. Ужгород, вул. Гагаріна, 9, т. 0971604574